

Walter Ripman's Classified Vocabulary – (P)LATINUM edition

Introduction to the (P)LATINUM edition

This version of the transcription of Walter Ripman's „Classified Vocabulary“ has been especially adapted to fit the order used in Evan Millner's „Swallowing the Dictionary“ audio files based on the same book and which are part of his LATINUM audio course. The most important mistakes in these audio files are marked in the text by a 📍 preceding the respective lemma. These mistakes are also listed in Appendix 3. They may seem to be many, but judging from the many errors I made during transcription and considering the difficulty of making an oral version based on Ripman's book with its idiosyncrasies, I can assure you that his performance is admirable.

This adaptation is based on the audio files as bought in May 2010.

Introduction

When it comes to learning any language, mastering as quickly as possible as much as possible of the vocabulary is one of the most important tasks in store for the student. „Ay, there's the rub,“ as Hamlet says. How can you do so?

It is impossible to learn *all* words, the vocabulary of most languages being far too large for such a brute force approach. While it might be possible to do so for the vocabulary of a single book, it may be wiser to choose a different approach, one giving heed to the „law of diminishing returns.“

There are two ways of selectively learning the important vocabulary:

1. Using word lists derived from word frequency
2. Using a topical vocabulary

The first approach is exemplified by Paul B. Diederich's "The frequency of Latin words and their endings", in which paper he lists word frequencies for more than 4,000 words.

The second approach is also exemplified by a piece of work by Paul B. Diederich, the „Basic Vocabulary“ of about 1,500 words, attached to the aforementioned paper. These words are sorted into word types (nouns, adjectives, etc.) and further into various categories like „Gods“, „City and Buildings“, „Verbs – Mental and Sensory Operations“.

However, a far more detailed vocabulary was published by Walter Ripman as part of his „Handbook of the Latin Language“.¹ It was used by Evan Millner, the creator of the *Latinum* language course, to create a set of „Vocabulary Building“ audio files. It closely follows the text. The original text, however, includes additional information useful to the student, for example concerning case constructions. I also found these audio files rather hard to digest without having first read the text itself or looking at the text while listening to the files.

Unfortunately, Ripman's „Classified Vocabulary“ has been been unavailable online until now, which is all the more lamentable as the dictionary part of it is very good as well, as it contains many sample phrases. Therefore I decided to bring at least the „Classified Vocabulary“ to the wider public, in the hope that it may help in getting a better grasp of the Latin language.

I want to stress that this publication is in no way connected with the *Latinum* course – which I can heartily recommend, by the way. So, any fault lies solely with me.

I mostly stuck with the original text, making some changes to the formatting to improve its readability. The transcription – as opposed to a facsimile edition – results in a loss of (a little) part of the information contained in the original book as Mr. Ripman used a rather ideosyncratic layout which sometimes juxtaposed contrasting words.

¹ Walter Ripman, „A Handbook of the Latin Language – Being a Dictionary, Classified Vocabulary, and Grammar“

I used the macrons as given in the original publication, so use them at your own risk. In a few cases, however, I added or removed macrons when these were obvious errata (relying on the information given in the dictionary part of the book). The most important changes made by me can be found in Appendix 2.

The abbreviations used in the text are collected in Appendix 1.

31 August 2011 – Carolus Raeticus

Index

1-3	Time	5
4-6	Place	10
7	Land	18
8	Farming	20
9	Sea, River, etc.	21
10	Sky	23
11	Seasons, Winds, Weather	23
12-16	Physical Properties	24
17-20	Size and Quality	29
21	Animals	33
22	Plants	35
23	Minerals	36
24-27	Man	37
28	Town	44
29	House	45
30	Government	47
31	Religion	51
32	Chance; Fate	52
33	Property, Trade	53
34	Offer, Request, Order, Give, Allow	56
35	Amusement, Sport	58
36	Tools, Materials, etc.	59
37	Army	59
38	Character	65
39	Work, Duty	69
40	Learning, Knowledge	70
41-43	Voice, Speech	77
44	Emotions	82
45	Law	86
46	Danger, Protection, Help	88
47	Guilt, Punishment	89
48-50	Sundry Groups	91

The Classified Vocabulary

1-3 TIME

1.1 time

tempus, time; t. dūcere, agere, dēgere, spend time; t. terere, waste, lose time; t. (annus, diēs) intercēdit, intervenes, passes

aeternus, eternal, everlasting; *noun* **aeternitās**

sempiternus, **perennis**, perpetual, enduring; *noun* **perennitās**

perpetuus, continuous, permanent; *noun*

perpetuitās; *verb* **perpetuāre**, continue without stopping

aevum, period, age

aetās, age, lifetime

saeculum, age, lifetime, generation, century; duōbus saeculis ante, 200 years before; aliquot saeculis post, some centuries later

compositiō annī, calendar

year

annus, year; integer a., complete y.; annō interiectō, after a y.; annō vertente, in the course of a year; intrā trēs annōs, within three y.; multīs post annīs *or* multīs annīs post, after many y.; priōre annō, in the previous y.; superior annus, the previous y.

annuus, lasting a year, yearly

anniversārius, yearly

annōtinus, last year's

perennis, lasting a year

quotannīs, yearly, annually

biennium, space of two years; **triennium**, do. of three; **quadriennium**, do. of four;

quīnquennium, do. of five

lūstrum, period of five years

mēnsis, month; *adj.* **mēnstruus**

bimēnstris, lasting two months

quandō? when

cum, **quandō**, **ubi**, **ut**, **quō tempore**, when

simulac, as soon as

quamdiū? quātenus? how long? **quamdiū**, as long as

dum, whilst

intereā, **interim**, meanwhile

simul, at the same time

spatium, space of time; s. nanciscī, gain time

tempus breve, short time

pūnctum temporis, moment

mōmentō temporis, at the decisive moment

q.v. seasons, 11.1

day

diēs, day; in diēs singulōs, daily; diem dicendō eximere, spend the day in talking; diem sūmere ad Actg, choose a day for;

adj. **diurnus**, by d.

lūce, **lūcī**, **interdiū**, by day, in the daytime

bīduum, space of two days; **trīduum**, of three;

quadrīduum, of four; trīduō intermissō, after an interval of three days; **hebdomas**, seven days

hōra, hour

hōrae, clock; **sōlārium**, sundial, clock

antelūcānus, before dawn

dīlūcēscere, **illūcēscere**, dawn; *noun*

dīlūculum

lūcet, **lūcēscit**, it is dawning

prīmā lūce, **ortō sōle**, **lūce ortā**, at dawn, sunrise

māne, morning; *adj.* **mātūtīnus**

• **ante merīdiem**, in the forenoon; *adj.*

antemerīdiānus; **merīdiēs**, noon; **post**

merīdiem, **dē merīdiē**, in the afternoon;

adj. **postmerīdiānus**

crepusculum, dusk

vesper, **vespera**, evening; *prīmō vespere or*

prīmā vesperī [hōrā], in first evening

hour; *adv.* **vesperī**; **pervesperī**, very late in the evening; *adj.* **vespertīnus**; *verb*

vesperāscere

sōlis occāsū, at sunset

prīma fax, early torchlight (just after dark)

nox, night; *sub noctem*, towards nightfall;

prīmā nocte, at nightfall, early in the night;

nocte intermissā, n. having meanwhile

fallen; *mediā nocte*, at midnight; *proximā*

nocte, last n.; *multā nocte*, late at n.; *ad*

multam noctem, far into n.; *adv.* **noctū**; *adj.* **nocturnus**, by n.; **pernoctāre**, spend the n.; **vigilia**, quarter of the n. (about three hours); *prima, secunda, tertia, quarta v.*

sērus, late, too late; *adv.* **sērō**, too late
hīs paucīs diēbus, a few days ago
nudiūs tertius, the day before yesterday
herī, yesterday; *adj.* **hesternus**
hodiē, to-day; *adj.* **hodiernus**
crās, to-morrow; *adj.* **crāstinus**
diēs crāstinus, the morrow (in the future); **diē posterō**, on the morrow (of a past date)
perendiē, on the day after to-morrow; *adj.* **perendinus**
diēs superior, the previous day
prīdiē, on the day before
postrīdie, posterō diē, on the day after, on the next day
post diem quīntum, after five days
cottīdiē, *adv.* daily; *adj.* **cottīdiānus**

1.2 before and after

ante (*prep. with Ac, adv.*); *adv.* **anteā**, **antehāc**; *conj.* **antequam, priusquam**, before
prior, former, previous; *adv.* **prius**, before, sooner, previously
tempus prius or **superius**, former days;
superiōribus temporibus, in earlier times
praeteritus, past; **praeterita, praeteritum tempus**, the past
prope est or in eō est ut subj., ... is on the point of happening.
post (*prep. with Ac, adv.*), after, afterwards; *adv.* **posteā, posthāc**, afterwards, hereafter; **postquam**, after
haud ita multō post, posteā aliquantō, brevī posteā, nōn multō posteā, a little later
posthāc, hereafter, henceforth
posterus, later, next, future
posteritās, the future
posterior, latter, later; *adv.* **posterius**
subinde, just after, then
aliquot post diēbus, some days after
ex intervāllō, after some time
futūrus, future
reliquum tempus, the future
porrō, in future
praesentīre, have a presentiment, foresee; *noun* **praesēnsiō; praevīdēre, prōspicere, prōvidēre**, foresee; *noun* **prōvisiō**
antecēdere, go before, precede; *noun* **antecessiō**

anticipāre, praecipere, praecurrere, anticipate; *noun* **anticipātiō**

1.3 first and last

prīmus, first; *adv.* **prīmō**, at first, **primum**, firstly
postrēmus, suprēmus, novissimus, last
postrēmō, lastly; **postrēmum, suprēmum**, for the last time
(ad) extrēmum, at last, finally
ultima tempora, earliest or latest times

q.v. beginning and end, 3.1, 3.3

1.4 always...never

quotiēns, how often; **totiēns**, so often
semper, numquam nōn, perpetuō, always, constantly
plērumque, ferē, generally, usually; *quod ferē fit*, as generally happens
vulgō, generally, commonly
saepe, persaepe, often; **saepissimē, saepenumerō** repeatedly, again and again
crēbrō, often (of a regular sequence)
trītus, common, commonplace, hackneyed
nōnnumquam, sometimes (fairly often)
interdum, quondam, subinde, identidem, occasionally, now and then, repeatedly
aliquandō, on certain occasions, sometimes (not often)
rārō, rarely
singulāris, rare, remarkable
semel et saepius, plūs quam semel, more than once
semel, once
umquam, ever; numquam, never; nec umquam, and never

q.v. custom, usual, unusual 49.1

1.5 already, still, not yet, at length

iam, by this time; **iam nunc, iam tum**, already
iamdūdum, iamprīdem, this long while
etiam, etiam tunc or nunc, adhūc, still
nōndum, neque adhūc, not yet
dēmum, aliquandō, at last; **dēnique**, at last, in short
tandem, at length

1.6 formerly, now, then

prīdem, long ago, of old, formerly
aliquandō, at some time (past, present or future)
quondam, once (past only, usually during some space of time)
olim, formerly, a long time ago, once (past or future)
● **abhinc quattuor annōs**, four years ago; a. *tribus diēbus*, three days ago
mātūrē, early, in good time; **mātūrius**, earlier
nūper, nōn (or haud) prīdem (or ita prīdem), lately, recently
paulō ante, but lately
dūdum, a little while ago
ad hōc tempus, until now
nunc, iam, in praesentiā, now
tempus praesēns, present time; **in (tempus) praesēns**, for the present
commodum, just in time, at the very moment
īnstāns, present; **īstantia (P)**, the present situation
hīs temporibus, nostrā aetāte, in our time, in modern times, nowadays
īlicō, extemplō, prōtinus, statim, continuō, cōnfestim, sine morā, ē vestigiō, immediately, then and there, forthwith
mox, brevī, mātūrē, soon, presently
propediem, very soon
quam primum, as soon as possible
ante tempus, too soon
deinde, inde, exinde, tum, tunc, then
eā tempestāte, tum temporis, id temporis, at that time
tum dēmum, then and then only
aliquandō, hereafter

1.7 delay; until

● **mora**, delay; *trīduī morā interpositā*, after a delay of three days; *nūllam moram interpōnere quīn subj.*, not lose a moment in; **morārī, cūctārī, tardāre, retardāre, distīnēre**, make slow, delay, defer; *noun cūctātiō*; **morātor, cūctātor**, one who delays, **mūginārī**, hesitate, delay
differre, postpone; *noun dilātiō*
prōcrāstināre, prōtrūdere, sustentāre, put off, delay; *nouns prōcrāstinātiō, sustentātiō*
prōducere, propāgāre, prōrogāre, rēicere, protract, prolong; *nouns prōductiō, propāgātiō, prōrogātiō*
dubitāre, delay (*intrans.*); *noun dubitātiō*

dōnec, quoad, until
ūsque ad, until
ad hunc ūsque diem, up to this day
adhūc, thus far, hitherto
quoūsq̄ue (tandem), how much longer

1.8 again

rūrsus, again
iterum, for the second time
dēnuō, afresh, once more
integrāre, renew
iterāre, duplicāre, repetere, repeat; *nouns iterātiō, repetītiō*
iterum atque iterum, semel iterumque, semel atque iterum, repeatedly
frequēns, repeated; **frequentāre**, do again, repeatedly
etiam atque etiam, again and again
retractāre, take up again
non postea or posthāc, not again

2.1 gradually, suddenly

paulātim, sēnsim, pedetemptim, gradātim, little by little, by degrees
repente, subitō, suddenly; *adj. repentīnus*, sudden, unexpected
dēsubitō, quite suddenly

2.2 for a long or short time

in omne tempus, for ever
diū, long; *comp. diūtius, superl. diūtissimē; diūtinus, diūturnus*, lasting, long, prolonged
iamprīdem, iamdūdum, now for a long time
longus, longinquus, tedious
aliquamdiū, aliquantum temporis, for some time
paulisper, for a little time
parumper, for a little while, for a moment

2.3 fast

celer, swift; *adv. celeriter; noun celeritās*
vēlōx, swift; *adv. vēlōciter; noun vēlōcītās*
pernīx, swift; *noun pernīcītās*
rapidus, citus, quick; *noun rapiditās; adv. cito*
volucer, swift, fleeting
cursim, raptim, quickly
praeceps, headlong, hasty

slow

tardus, slow; *noun* **tarditās**

lentus, slow, lingering, sluggish

q.v. make slow, delay, 1.7

accelerāre, festīnāre, properāre, hasten,
make haste; *properātō opus est*, there is
need of haste; *nouns* **festīnātiō, properātiō**;
adv. **festīnātō**

2.4 old and young

senex (*usually noun*) old; old man; *comp.*

senior, older; *noun* **senectūs**, old age; *adj.*

senīlis

nātū grandis, old; **māior, māximus** (*with or
without annīs or nātū*), older, oldest

• **quot annōs nātus es?** how old are you?;

annōs XXX *nātus sum* *or* *vixī*

aequālis, of the same age

iuvenis (*usually noun*), youthful; one in prime
of life; *comp.* **iūnior**, younger; *noun*

iuventūs, youth

nātū (or annīs) minor, minimus, younger,
youngest

parvus, young, e.g. *parvī liberī*

q.v. ages of man, 24.2

2.5 old and new

vetus, old (still existing); *comp.* **vetustior**;

noun **vetustās**; *verb* **inveterāscere**, grow
old

antīquus, vetustus, old (no longer existing),
ancient; **antīquitus** (*adv.*), in *or* from
ancient times; *noun* **antīquitās**; *ultima a.*,
extreme antiquity

• **obsolēscere**, grow old

prīscus, primitive, olden, old-fashioned

prīstinus, primitive, original

novus, new; *quid novī* what news? *noun*
novitās

recēns, fresh, recent

novāre, renovāre, reficere, restituere,

redintegrāre, instaurāre, make new,

restore; *nouns* **renovātiō, restitūtiō,**

instaurātiō

dē, ab *or* **ex integrō**, anew

2.6 opportunity, occasion

occāsiō, facultās, potestās, opportunity;

occāsiōnem *or* *facultātem* *or* *potestātem*
dare, or potestātem facere, G gerund,
give an o.

locum *or* **cōpiam dare** *G gerund* *or* **ad**

gerund, give an opportunity; *dare*

suspiciōnī locum, give occasion for
suspicion

locō *or* **in locō**, opportunely

tempus, right time, opportunity; **prīmō**

quōque tempore, at the first opportunity;

suō tempore, at a fitting time; **temporī** *or*

temperī, at the right time

BEGINNING AND END

3.1 beginning

orīgō, fōns, source

auctor, originator

creāre, generāre, ingenerāre, gīgnere, create;

nouns **creātor, generātor, genitor, creatiō**

(Deus) effector (mundī), creator (God)

ēdere, produce, bring forth

cōstruere, construct, make; *noun* **cōstrūctiō**

• **initium, prīncipium, exōrdium,**

prīmōrdium, exōrsus, inceptiō, introitus,

beginning; *adj.* **prīncipālis**, original

incipere, ōrdīrī, incohāre, exōrdīrī, begin

orīrī, coorīrī, exorīrī, exsistere, arise; *noun*

ortus

coepisse, have begun

īstituere, institute, begin

suscipere, take up

cōnārī, attempt, undertake; *noun* **cōnātus**

experīrī, try; *noun* **experientia**

3.2 growth

alere, rear

crēscere concrēscere, grow

recrēscere, grow again

flōrēre, flourish

3.3 end

cōficere, peragere, perficere, absolvere,
complete

terminus, goal; **termināre**, end

dēcrēscere, decrease

pūtēscere, decay, rot; **pūtīdus**, rotten

abolere, comminuere, cōnfringere, cōsumere, delere, destruere, demoliri, diruere, disperdere, dissolvere, divellere, evellere, evertere, extinguere, percellere, perdere, destroy

excidere or excindere or proruere (e.g. domos), destroy

dissolutio, eversio, exitium, extinctio, interitio, interitus, labes, naufragium, obitus, perniciēs, pestis, ruina, destruction, ruin; ad interitum ruere, rush to destruction; *adjs.* **exitiabilis, exitialis, exitiosus, pestifer, pestilens, perniciosus**

interire, perire, disperire, emori, intermori, perish, decay

ad nihilum venire or recidere, come to naught, perish

ruere, go to ruin; **ruinosus**, ruinous, in ruins

collabereri, be brought to ruin

desinere, desistere, cease

deficere, come to an end

effluere, pass away, vanish

finis, end; *finem facere, with Dtg, Gtg or G gerund*, bring to an end; *finem statuere*, assign an end to, make an end of; *verb finire*, end

clausula, end (of letter), last sentence (of period), last verses (of play)

epistulam concludere, end a letter

exitus, conclusion

exitiosus, exitiabilis, disastrous, fatal, deadly

funus, destruction, end; e.g. *reipublicae*

occasus, downfall, ruin

BIRTH AND DEATH

3.4 birth

parere, give birth to; **partus**, birth; offspring

nasci, be born; **natalis**, natal; *diēs n., or n.*, birthday; *nātū*, by birth; *māior n.*, older;

māximus n., oldest

renasci, be born again

ingredi vitam, be born

vivere, live; **vita**, life; *introire in vitam*, enter on l.; *manere in vitā*, remain alive; *vitā frui*, enjoy life, live; **vivus**, alive;

mātre tuā vivā, in your mother's lifetime

reviviscere, live again, revive

animans, living being

3.5 growth

nūtrire, foster, rear; **nūtrix**, nurse

excēdere ē pueris, pass out of childhood

adolēscere, grow up

consenēscere, grow old, weak

q.v. ages of man, 24.2

3.6 death

- **mors, obitus, discessus dē vitā, excessus (ē vitā), fātum**, death; m. *eum absūpsit*, carried off; *mortem obiit*, he died; **mortalis**, subject to death; **moribundus**, dying; *noun mortalitās*
- mortifer**, deadly, causing death
- mori, abire ē vitā, cursum vitae cōficere, obire, cedere vitā, decedere (also with dē vitā), discedere ē vitā, excēdere vitā or ē vitā, ex or dē vitā exire or migrāre, vitā emigrāre, hinc demigrāre, perire, dēperire, occidere, occumbere (also with mortem or morte), animam agere or efflāre, animam or vitam edere, vitam amittere, dēsciscere ā vitā, expirāre, die; vitam abicere**, surrender life; **vitam complere**, conclude life
- sī quid mihi hūmānus accidisset**, if I were to die
- mors voluntāria**, suicide; **mortem or necem sibi cōsciscere, vitā sē privāre, sē interimere, ā vitā recedere**, commit suicide
- sē suspendere**, hang oneself; **suspendium**, hanging

- **mortem oppetere**, encounter death, die (a violent or unnatural death)

lētum, violent death; *see 47.2*

extrēmus (or postrēmus) spīritus, dying breath

concidere, fall lifeless

in aciē cadere, fall in battle

vitae cursum cōficere, finish one's career

mortuus, defūctus, exanguis, dead

inferi, the dead; *apud inferos*, among the dead

inferiae, sacrifices in honour of the dead;

parentāre mortuīs, bring sacrifices to dead relations

iūsta, funeral ceremonies

mourning

vestem or vestitum mūtāre, go into mourning

ad vestitum suum redire, go out of mourning

sordēs P, mourning garment; mourning

toga sordida or pulla, dark grey toga, worn in mourning

lūgubris, mourning (*adj.*)

q.v. inheritance, 33.6

funeral

cadāver, dead body, corpse

lectus, bier

• **fūnus**, funeral; *f. dūcere*, conduct a f.; *in f. venīre*, go to a f.; *adj. fūnebris*, e.g.

cōntiō; **fūnebria**, funeral rites

exsequiae, funeral train, obsequies; *exsequiās prōsequī*, attend a funeral

efferre, carry to burial

cremāre, cremate; **cinis**, ashes

rogus, funeral pile

humāre, inter

sepelīre, inter, cremate; **sepultūra**, burial, funeral obsequies; *sepultūrā afficere*, bury

sepulcrum, **monumentum**, **bustum**, tomb, grave, burial place; *Acpn in sepulcrō condere*, inter

tumulus, sepulchral mound, barrow

urna, cinerary urn

ēlogium, epitaph

inhumātus, unburied

4-6 PLACE

4.1

īnfinītās, **immēsum**, unlimited space

orbis terrārum, **mundus**, **terrae**, **ūniversum**, world, universe; **mundānus**, citizen of the world

intermundia, space between worlds

deus artifex or **mōlitor mundi**, God the creator of the world

regiō, quarter, region

locus, place; (*n P loca*, region, locality)

ubi? where? *ubi gentium?*, where in the world?

ubi, **quā**, where; **quācumque**, **ubicumque**, wherever

hōc locō, **hīc**, here, in this place

illīc, **istīc**, **ibi**, **eō locō**, there, in that place

ibīdem, **eōdem locō**, in the same place

alibī, in another place

ubīque, **undique**, **omnibus locīs**, **omnibus (in) partibus**, everywhere

ubivīs, **usquam**, **uspīam**, anywhere

alicubī, in some place

multīs locīs, **multifāriam**, in many places

passim, at different places

nusquam, in no place, nowhere

praestō (*adv.*) **sum**, am present, ready, at hand

domī militīaeque, at home and abroad

longē lātēque, far and wide

sēdēs, base, foundation

septentriōnēs, (*m P*), north

merīdiēs, south

occidēs, (**sōlis**) **occāsus**, west

oriēs, (**sōlis**) **ortus**, east

spectat in merīdiem, it faces south

vergit in occidentem, it lies to the west

4.2 be at rest

stāre, stand; **statiō**, stay, sojourn; **status**, posture, position; **stabilis**, firm, steady; *noun stabilitās*

assistere, take up a position, stand

cōnsistere, take one's stand, halt

resistere, stand still

cōnstāre, remain; **cōnstitī**, stand

īnstāre, stand in

restāre, stand firm

sistere, **subsistere**, stand still, stop

sedēre, sit; *noun sessiō*

obsidēre, sit in or at

cause to be at rest

sistere, **statuere**, set up

pōnere, **locāre**, **collocāre**, place; *noun collocātiō*

stabilīre, fix, establish

iacere, **iactāre**, throw; *noun iactātiō*

sternere, stretch flat

suspendere, hang up

subsīdere, stay

iacēre, **cubāre**, lie

humī strātus or **fūsus**, lying (flat) on the ground

supīnus, lying on one's back

prōnus, lying face downward

pendēre, hang, be suspended

4.3 stay

versārī, dwell, stay, abide

manēre, remain; *noun* **mānsiō**

permanēre, **perstāre**, **persevērāre**,

remanēre, stay to the end, endure, remain;

nouns **permānsiō**, **remānsiō**, **persevērantia**

residēre, remain, be left

eōdem remanēre vestigiō, stay in the same place

restāre, **superesse**, be left, remain over

reliquus, **residuus**, left over; **reliquum**,

residuum, **pars reliqua**, the rest

cōram *Ab*, in the presence of

leave

sē locō movēre, leave

relinquere, leave behind; *noun* **relictio**

linquere, leave

dērelinquere, abandon (neglect); *noun*

dērelictio

dēserere, desert; *noun* **dēsertor**

dēstituere, abandon (in destitution)

discēdere ab *Ab*, forsake, leave (person); *noun*

discessus

excēdere *Ab* or *ex Ab*, leave (place)

q.v. other verbs in 5.1

4.4 go

īre, go; *noun* **itiō**

commeāre, go in and out, to and fro

sē cōferre, betake oneself, go

tendere, go, march, travel

pergere, proceed, go on

sē in viam dare, set out

gradīrī, **ingredī**, walk, step out

gradus, **passus**, step; **ingressus**, walking;

gradātīm, step by step

tītubāre, reel, stumble

vacillāre, sway, stagger, reel

lābī, **illābī**, slip; *noun* **lāpsus**

ambulāre, walk (at leisure)

baculum, walking-stick

inambulāre, **spatiārī**, take a walk; *noun*

inambulatiō

vādere, walk (briskly)

ciēre, **movēre**, **commovēre**, move;

permovēre, move (thoroughly); *nouns*

mōtus, **mōmentum**; *adj.* **mōbilis**

dūcere, **perdūcere**, lead, conduct

dīrigere, direct

mittere, send; *noun* **missiō**

ferre, **portāre**, carry

trahere, draw, drag; *noun* **tractus**

intorquēre, hurl

incēdere, walk (with dignity); **incessus**, walking, gait

prōsequī *Acpn*, accompany

contendere, **festīnāre**, **mātūrāre**, **properāre**,

approperāre, hasten; *noun* **ruere**, rush

vehī, be conveyed; **currū** *v.*, drive; in **equō** *v.*, ride; in **nāvī** *v.*, sail

currere, run; *nouns* **cursus**, running, voyage;

currus, car, chariot

proficīscī, set out, travel; **pedibus** *p.*, set out

on a land journey; **profectiō**, departure

iter facere, go on a journey

viam ingredī, take a road

cursum tenēre, hold on a course; **cursum**

dīrigere ad *Ac*, make for

errāre, **vagārī**, **pervagārī**, wander, roam, rove

about; **vagus**, wandering about

peragrāre, wander or travel through; *noun*

peragratiō

make to go

vehere, transport, convey

ferrī, travel

obīre *Ac*, traverse, travel through, visit

perlustrāre *Ac*, travel over

peregrīnārī, travel, go abroad; **peregrīnatiō**,

travel or stay in foreign country

migrāre, **dēmigrāre ex** *Ab* in *Ac*, migrate;

noun **migratiō**

viātor, traveller

viaticum, money for journey

q.v. transport by land, see 7.6

q.v. by water, see 9.3, .4

4.5 turn, bend, roll, fold

vertere, turn (*trans.*); **vertī**, turn (*intrans.*);
versārī, turn often, twist about; **invertere**,
turn round
flectere, bend, turn; **flexus**, turning, turning
point; **flexiō**, bending; **flexibilis**, flexible;
flexuōsus, winding; **īnfectere**, bend; *noun*
īnflexiō; **reflectere**, bend or turn back
intendere, bend, turn
torquēre, twist, turn, bend; **tortuōsus**, twisted;
obtorquēre, twist, wrench; **retorquēre**,
twist back
inclīnāre, bend, incline, turn; *noun* **inclīnātiō**
volvere, turn round, roll (*trans.*); **volvī**, roll
(*intrans.*); **volūtāre**, roll, twist; **volūbilis**,
turning, rolling
revolvere, roll back, unroll
plicāre, fold
explicāre, **replicāre**, **pandere**, unfold

5.1 towards/away from

towards

quō? or **quōrsum?** whither?
utrō? to which side, whither?
hūc, to this place
illūc, **istūc**, **eō**, to that place
eōdem, to the same place
aliquō, to some place
nusquam, to no place
passim, **in omnēs partēs**, in all directions
quō, to which place
quōcumque, **quōquō**, whithersoever
ad Ac, to
sub Ac, to
ūsque ad Ac, (all the way) to
adversus, **versus Ac**, towards
venīre, come
ventitāre, come often
advenīre, **pervenīre**, arrive; *noun* **adventus**;
primō adventū, immediately on arrival
prōvinciam tetigit, he reached the province
accēdere, **succēdere**, **appropinquāre**, **adīre**,
subīre, approach; *nouns* **accessiō**, **accessus**,
successus, **aditus**; *aditum Dpn ad Actg*
interclūdere, bar one's way to; *omnēs*
aditūs Gtg praeclūdere, *saepīre*, bar all
approaches to
obrēpere, creep up, draw near
adventāre, approach, advance (espec. of
hostile forces)
advehī, come (ride, sail, etc.) to
adnāre, swim to

allābī, glide to
arrēpere, creep up
īnstāre, approach; *vēr īnstat*, spring is near
rēctō itinere petere, make straight for
tendere (e.g. *Venusiam*), make for
incidere in Ac, come upon, meet unexpectedly
accurrere, **occurrere**, run up
advolāre, rush up
assilīre, jump to
īnferri, rush against
admovēre, bring, lead to; *noun* **admōtiō**
appellere, **adigere**, drive towards or up; *noun*
adāctiō
apportāre, carry to or up
addūcere, lead to or up
afferre, bring to or up
advehere, convey to
advertere, turn towards; *oculōs ad eum a.*,
turn one's eyes towards him
obicere, throw against, in the way
offendere, knock against; come upon
obviam īre or **prōcēdere Dpn** or **prōdīre**, go
to meet

away from

unde? whence?
hinc, from this place
illinc, **istinc**, **istim**, **inde**, from that place
indidem, from the same place
alicunde, from some place
ex intervāllō, from some distance
undique, **ex omnibus partibus**, from all sides
extrīnsecus, **forīs**, from the outside
unde, from which place
ā, **ab Ab**, from; N.B. *abs tē*
abstinēre, keep away
abīre, **dēvehī**, go away; *noun* **abitus**
exīre, **absistere**, depart (from); *noun* **exitus**
cēdere, **sēcēdere**, withdraw; *noun* **sēcēssiō**
abscēdere, **dēcēdere ab**, **dē** or **ex Ab**,
discēdere ab Abpn, **excēdere ex Ab place**,
dīgredī ab Ab, leave, depart from; *longius*
discēdere, go farther away; *nouns*
abscēssus, **dēcēssiō**, **discēssus**, **dīgressiō**,
dīgressus
ēgredī, quit; *noun* **ēgressus**
dēgredī, go away
āvertere, **āversārī**, **dēclīnāre**, **dēvertere**, turn
away or aside; *noun* **dēclīnātiō**
āfugere, run away, abscond
āvolāre, **dēvolāre**, fly away
diffluere, flow away
ēlābī, slip away
exclūdere, keep away, remove
dēpellere, push aside, remove

abiungere, separate, remove
abigere, expellere, extrūdere, exturbāre, prōturbāre, drive away; *nouns* **expulsiō, expulsor**
ablēgāre, relēgāre, send away; *noun* **ablēgatiō**
āmovēre, dēmovēre, dīmovēre, removēre, retrahere, sēmovēre, submovēre, remove; *nouns* **āmōtiō, remōtiō**
abdere, dēpōnere, put away
trahere, draw away; *noun* **tractus**
arcēre, prevent from approaching, keep at a distance
abdūcere, dēdūcere, ēdūcere, lead away; *noun* **dēductiō**
asportāre, dēportāre, dēvehere, bring or carry away
abstrahere, dētrahere, distrahere, subtrahere, draw or take away; *noun* **dētractiō**
dēmere, take away
aufferre, āvehere, carry off
adimere, ēripere, take away; *nouns* **adēmptiō, ēreptiō**
surripere, take away secretly
revellere, tear away
succīdere, cut off
abrādere, scrape off
dētrūdere, thrust away
āvocāre, sēvocāre, call off from, withdraw, divert; *noun* **āvocatiō**
mittere, dīmittere, dismiss; *nouns* **missiō, dīmissiō**
abicere, prōicere, throw away
āvellere, abripere, dēripere, abrumpere, eximere, abscindere, tear away, break off; *noun* **abruptiō**
praeripere, tear or snatch away
abscīdere, dēcīdere, dēsecāre, reseccāre, cut off
abluere, dīluere, ēluere, wash away, remove
abstergēre, wipe away

5.2 in/out

in

in *Ab*, in
intrā *Ac*, in
intus (*adv.*), **intrīnsecus, intrōrsum** or **-us**, within
penitus, inwardly, internally, far within
domī, in the house
internus (*late*), internal
interior, on the inner side
intimus, inmost

inesse, be in
inhaerēre, be inherent
īnsidēre, sit in, adhere to
īnsitus, inborn, inherent

out

extrā *Ac*, without, on the outside of
extrā (*adv.*), without
forīs, out of doors
externus, outward
exterior, on the outer side
extrēmus, outermost
exstāre, stand out
prōspicere, prōspectāre, look out; *noun* **prōspectus**

5.3 into/out of

into

in *Ac*, into
intrō (*adv.*), **intrōrsum** or **-us**, in, to the inside
inīre, introīre, intrāre *Ac* or **in** *Ac*, **ingredī** *Ac*, **immigrāre, invādere**, enter (*trans.*); also *intrans.*; **introitus, ingressiō, ingressus**, entrance
intrōspicere, look into
penetrāre, permānāre, sē īnsinuāre, get into
incidere, fall into
incurrere in *Ac*, run into
īnscondere, climb into
irreperere, creep or steal in
īnsilīre, īnsultāre, leap in
irrupere, irruere, rush into; *noun* **irruptiō**
involāre, fly or rush into
īnfluere, flow into
invehī, ride, drive, etc., into; *noun* **invectiō**
īnsere, impōnere, inculcāre, interpōnere, put into, insert, introduce; *noun* **interpositiō**
indūcere, intrōdūcere, lead into; *nouns* **inductiō, intrōductiō**
īnferre, ingerere, invehere, carry into; *noun* **invectiō**
inicere, throw into
importāre, import
involvere, wrap up; **involūcrum**, wrapper, covering
īnflāre, blow into; *noun* **īnflātus**
īnfundere in *Ac*, pour into
īnfigere, fasten in, thrust in
imprimere, press into
incīdere, cut into
īnsinuāre, thrust into
intexere, weave into
immittere, send, cast into

out of

ē, ex *Ab*, out of
forās (*adv.*), to the outside, out of doors
exīre, go out; *noun* **exitus**
ēgredī, go out; *noun* **ēgressus**
ēmergere, exorīrī, rise, come forth
ēvādere, come out or forth
ēminēre, stand out
excidere, fall out
excurrere, run out or forth; *noun* **excursus**
exsilire, prōsilire, leap out
ērumpere, sally or burst forth; *noun* **ērūptiō**
ēvolāre, fly out, break forth
prōrumpere, break forth
ēvehī, ride, etc., out
effluere, ēmānāre, prōfluere, flow out
extrahere, prōtrahere, draw out
ēlicere, draw or entice out
ēruere, pluck out
ēdūcere, ēgerere, ēvehere, lead forth
efferre, prōmere, bring out, bring forth
ēripere, exceptāre, take out
vellere, pull out
ēvolvere, unroll; *noun* **ēvolūtiō**
explicāre, unfold
exprimere, press out
fundere, diffundere, effundere, prōfundere,
pour out; *nouns* **fūsiō, effūsiō**
offundere, perfundere, pour over
excutere, shake out
exclūdere, shut out
prōripere, drag or snatch out
pellere, expellere, exigere, ēicere, extrūdere,
exturbāre, drive out; *nouns* **expulsiō,**
expulsor, exāctiō, ēiectiō
prōtrūdere, thrust out
ēverrere, sweep out
ēvellere, excerpere, revellere, pluck out; *noun*
ēvulsiō
extorquēre, wrench out
excīdere, exsecāre, cut out
ēdere, ēmittere, send forth; *noun* **ēmissiō**
ēvomere, spit or cast out

5.4 up and high/down and low

up and high

suprā *Ac*, **super** *Ab*, above, over
suprā (*adv.*), above
īnsuper, on top, from above

q.v. AT THIS POINT EVAN MILLNER
REPEATS THE ENTRIES "EFFLUERE" TO
"EVOMERE" FROM SECTION 5.3.

dēsuper, from above
sursum or **s. versus**, upwards
altus, high (*also* deep); *noun* **altitudō**
celsus, excelsus, sublīmis, ēditus, high, lofty
prōcērus, tall, high; *noun* **prōcēritās**
arduus, high, steep
superus, above, upper, higher
superior, higher
summus, (*poetic*) **suprēmus**, highest; *summus*
mōns, the top of the mountain
culmen, summit
vertex, top
summus locus, highest point
īnsistere, stand on
surgere, assurgere, cōsurgere, exurgere,
rise, get up
suspicere, look up; *noun* **suspectus**
scandere, ascendere, cōscendere,
ēscendere, cōnīti, ascend, climb; *noun*
ascēsus, cōscēnsiō
salire, jump; *noun* **saltus**
exsilire, exsultāre, prōsilire, leap up
sublīme ferrī, fly up
tollere, attollere, extollere, levāre, sublevāre,
raise, lift up
ērigere, set up
subvehere, carry or take up (stream)

down and low

īnfra *Ac*, **subter** *Ac*, **sub** *Ac*, below, under
īnfra, subter (*adv.*), below
deorsum, downwards
humilis, low; *noun* **humilitās**

q.v. THE REST OF SECTION 5.4 is MISSING
IN EVAN'S AUDIO VERSION

prōclīvis, descending, downhill
praeceps, steep, precipitous
profundus, deep; *noun* **profundum**
īnferus, lower
īnferior, lower (of two)
īnfimus, īmus, lowest; *sub īnfimō colle*, at
the foot of the hill
fundus, bottom
recumbere, lie down
dēpendere, prōpendēre, hang down
dēvehī, go down
dēsīdere, sink down
cōnsīdere, sink, subside
cadere, dēcīdere, fall; *noun* **cāsus**
prōcumbere, fall to the ground

dēlābī, prōlābī, slip down, fall; *noun*
prōlāpsiō
concidere, fall down
dēscendere, climb down; *noun* **dēscēsus**
dēfluere, flow, swim or glide down
salīre dē Ab, dēsīlīre, leap down
ruere, rush down, tumble
dēcurre, run or flow down; *noun* **dēcursus**
dēvolāre, fly or hasten down
dēvolvī, rush down
sē praecipitāre, throw oneself down
dēmītere, drop; *sē manibus d.*, let oneself
down; *noun* **dēmīssiō**
dēferre, dēducere, dēportāre, bring down
dēvehere, carry down
pōnere, dēpōnere, put down
affligere, abicere, dēicere, dēturbāre, throw
down; *Acpn praecipitem dēicere or*
praecipitāre, cast down headlong
premere, supprimere, press down
dētrūdere, thrust down
sternere, fell, knock down
dēvolvere, roll down
dēmergere, immergere, sink, plunge (*trans.*)
succidere, cut down

5.5 through/across

through

per Ac, through
pervius, what can be passed through
pervādere, go through
percurrere, run through
perequitāre, ride through
pervehī, ride, sail, etc., through
pervolāre, fly or hasten through
trāns- (or trā-)-nāre or -natāre, swim
through or across
perfringere, perrumpere, break through
intercidere, succidere, cut through
perferre, pervehere, carry through
perlucēre, shine through
perspicere, see through

q.v. pierce, 48.8

across

trāns Ac, across
trānsversus, lying across
trānsīre, go across
trānsgridī, trāicere, cross (a river), *also* make
to cross, e.g. *exercitum flūmen trāiēcīt*;
trānsgressus, trāiectus, trāiectiō, crossing,
passage

trāscendere, cross (a mountain, etc.)
trāscurrere, run across
trānsilīre, leap across
trā(ns)ferre, trānsportāre, trānsvehere,
carry across; *noun* **trālātiō, trānsvectiō**
trādūcere, lead, bring or carry across
trāsmītere, send across; *noun* **trānsmissiō**

5.6 between

inter Ac, between
intervāllum, space between
interesse, be or lie between
intercidere, fall between
intericere, throw between; *noun* **interiectus**
interpōnere, place between, insert; *noun*
interpositiō
intermittere, allow to intervene; *noun*
intermissiō

5.7 side

latus, side, flank; *ā latere, ā lateribus*,
on or at the side(s), on the flank(s)
dextra, right side; **sinistra, laeva**, left side
dextrā (laevā), on the right (left)
dextrōrsus (sinistrōrsus, ad laevam), to the
right (left)
utrimque, on *or* from both sides
ex omnibus partibus, from all sides
ultrō citrōque, on this side and on that, to and
fro
ab alterā parte...ab alterā, on one side...on
the other
ūnā ex parte, from one side
oblīquus, sidelong, slanting; **oblīquē**,
sideways
praeter Ac, past
praeterīre, praetergridī, pass by
praetervehī, drive, ride or sail by; *noun*
praetervectiō
cis Ac, citrā Ac, on this side of
citrā, citrō adv., on this side
citerior adj., nearer, on this side
trāns Ac, ultrā Ac, on the farther side of
ultrā, ultrō, ulterius adv., beyond
ulterior adj., beyond, farther, on the other side

5.8 opposite

contrā Ac, opposite
ē regiōne G or D, ex adversō G or D, contrā
(*adv.*), opposite
adversus, contrārius, opposite; *in*
contrāriās partēs, in opposite directions

oppōnere, set opposite; *noun* **oppositus**

5.9 on, over/under

on, over

super *Ac Ab*, over; *also adv.*

nītor, rest on, lean on

subnīsus or **subnīxus**, resting on

trānscredī, go over; *noun* **trānsgressiō**

trāscendere, step over

trānsilīre, leap over

superfluere, run over, overflow

superfundī, overflow

superpōnere, put on

trādūcere, lead, bring or carry over

trāicere, throw over

suffundere, **superfundere**, pour over

imminēre, **impēdēre**, **prominēre**, overhang

under

sub *Ac*, (to) under; *Ab*, under

subesse, be under

subīre, **succēdere**, go under

surrēpere, creep under

subdere, **submittere**, put under

subscrībere, write below; *noun* **subscrīptiō**

subdūcere, **subtrahere**, draw from under

suppōnere, put under

subigere, bring under

subicere, bring or throw under

suggerere, lay under

substernere, spread or lay under

submergere, dip under, submerge

suffundere, pour under

subruere, **suffōdere**, undermine

6.1 near/far

near

quoad? **quātenus?** **quoūsqe?** how far?

spatium, **intervāllum**, **discrīmen**, distance

distāre, be distant

passus, pace

prope *Ac*, near; *also adv.*, e.g. *prope absum*,
am not far away

apud *Ac*, (quite) near

comminus, *adv.*, near

adesse, be near, close at hand

ante pedēs positum esse, stare in the face

adstāre, stand at or near

adhaerēre, keep close to; *noun* **adhaesiō**

iuxtā *Ac*, **propter** *Ac*, close to, hard by

propter, **iuxtā**, *adv.*, near

propinquus, near; *noun* **propinquitās**;

propior, nearer; **proximus**, nearest

subicere, bring or throw near

continēns, **appositus**, **subiectus**, **cōfninis**,

lying near, adjacent

vīcīnus, neighbouring; *nouns* **vīcīnitās**, **vīcīnia**

subesse, be near

accolere, live near; **accola**, neighbour

suppetere, be at hand, be present

haerēre, cling, adhere

ad manum habēre, have at hand

far

procul ā or **ab** *Ab*, far from

procul, **ēminus**, *adv.*, at a distance

abesse, be absent; *longē a.*, be far away

ē longinquō, from afar

longinquus, distant

ultimus, farthest, very remote

remōtus, remote

q.v. words meaning approach and depart, 5.1

6.2 before/behind

before, in front and forward

prō *Ab*, in front of

ante *Ac*, before

prae *Ab*, in front of, ahead of

ante *adv.*, before

prōtinus, forward

frōns, front; **ā fronte**, in front, before

prōnus, leaning forward

adversus, in front; e.g. *adversum vulnus*;

adversōs aggressus est, attacked them in front

praeīre, **praecēdere**, **praegredī**, go in front;

noun **praegressiō**

praecurrere, run before, precede; *nouns*

praecursiō, **praecursor**

praedūcere, take or draw in front

praeferre, carry in front

praefigere, fasten in front

praemittere, send in advance

praepōnere, set before; *noun* **praepositiō**

praerumpere, break off in front

praesecāre, cut off in front

prōcēdere, **prōgredī**, **prōdīre**, advance, come

forward; *nouns* **prōcessiō**, **prōgressiō**,

prōgressus

prōcumbere, fall forward

prōcurrere, run forward; *noun* **prōcursus**

prōvehī, advance (esp. of riding or sailing)

succēdere, move forward (*intrans.*)

exsistere, come forward

prōdere, go forth

prōruere, rush forward
sē prōripere, burst forth
prōmovēre, move forward (*trans.*)
prōdūcere, lead forward
prōferre, bring forward
impellere, prōpellere, drive forward, urge on;

noun **impulsiō**

prōtrūdere, thrust forward
trūdere, pellere, push
obstāre, stand before
obsistere, place oneself before
obdūcere, lead or draw before
obicere, throw before; *noun* **obiectus**
praevertēre, put before
obstruere, erect in front; *noun* **obstrūctiō**
obtendere, draw in front of
oppōnere, set before

behind and backward, back

post *Ac*, **pōne** *Ac*, behind
post, pōne, *adv.*, behind
retrō, back
retrōrsum, rursum, backwards
tergum, back, rear; *ā tergō*, (from) behind, at the back
āversus, behind; *āversōs aggressus est*, he attacked them from behind
sequī, follow
subsequī, follow up
succēdere, succeed; *noun* **successor**
cēdere, recēdere, retractāre, sē subdūcere
refl., withdraw, retire; *noun* **recessus**
revehī, drive, sail, etc., back
recurrere, run or hasten back
redīre, regredī, revenīre, revertī, come back, return; *nouns* **reditus, regressus, reversiō**, return; *reditū interclūdī*, be prevented from returning
remigrāre, wander back, return
redux, returning
recidere, fall back
resilīre, leap back, rebound
repōnere, put back
revehere, bring back
retrahere, draw or drag back
redūcere, redigere, lead back; *noun* **reductiō**
referre, reportāre, carry back
pellere, repellere, refūtāre, drive back
revolvere, roll back
rēicere, throw back
repercutere, cast back
refundere, pour back
remittere, send back; *noun* **remissiō**
retinēre, retentāre, refrēnāre, supprimere, hold back; *noun* **retentiō**

restringere, revincīre, bind back

6.3 together/apart

together

cum *Ab*, with

simul, unā, *adv.* together, at the same place
congrēdī, convenīre, occurrere, meet; *nouns*

congressiō, congressus, occursus

concurrere, assemble; *noun* **concursum**

legere, colligere, gather, collect; *noun*

collēctiō

condūcere, cōnferre, cōnstruere, bring together; *noun* **collātiō, cōnstrūctiō**

cōgere, bring together (by force)

cōnfligere, strike together; *noun* **cōnflīctus**

congregāre, comportāre, bring together

conicere, throw or bring together

cōnficere, get together

continēre, hold together

contrahere, draw together; *noun* **contractiō**

compōnere, place together, join; *noun*

compositiō

stringere, bind together

adnectere, cōnsociāre, connect

cōnfigere, fasten together

iungere, coniungere, cōnserere, serere,

coāgmentāre, join; *nouns* **iūnctiō,**

coniūnctiō; coāgmentum, joint

colligāre, nectere, cōnectere, innectere,

cōpulāre, bind together, combine; *nouns*

nexus, cōpulātiō

sociāre, cōnsociāre, combine, associate; *noun*

societās

contexere, interweave, connect

miscēre, commiscēre, immiscēre,

permiscēre, combine

admiscēre, admix

cōfundere, pour together, combine; *noun*

cōnfūsiō

immiscērī *D*, or **sē immiscēre**, mingle with (*intrans.*)

intexere, join together

iūnctus, united, combined

coīre, combine, be joined

nōdus, bond

apart

hiātus, cleft, opening, fissure

lacūna, cavity, cleft

rīma, crack, slit, crevice

sēparātīm, less often **seorsum**, *adv.*, apart

distinēre, keep apart

dīlābī, diffugere, scatter, disperse (*intrans.*)

spargere, aspergere, scatter, sprinkle; *sē s.*
or spargī, scatter (*intrans.*); *noun aspersion*
cōnspargere, inspergere, respergere, strew,
sprinkle
dispargere, scatter about, disperse; *noun*
dispersus
cōnsternere, strew
differre, diffundere, dispellere, dissipāre,
scatter; *noun dissipatiō*
perfundere, sprinkle
disicere, scatter (enemies)
findere, diffindere, scindere, discindere,
interscindere, discernere, dīvellere,
cleave, tear, rend asunder; *noun fissiō*
dīdūcere, dīvidere, dīmovere, dirimere,
disiungere, disparāre, dīstinere,
sēiungere, sēcernere, sēclūdere, sēgregāre,
sēparāre, separate; *nouns dīductiō, dīvisiō,*
dirēptus, disiunctiō, sēiunctiō, sēcretiō,
sēparatiō
dissolvere, loosen, separate; *noun dissolutiō*
dīrumpere, break asunder, sever
dīripere, tear asunder; *noun dīreptiō*
sēparātus, separate (*adj.*)

q.v. divide, distribute, 17.6

ligāre, alligāre, obligāre, bind
illigāre, tie, knit, fasten together
dēligāre, bind fast
religāre, bind back, bind
astringere, draw together, bind
restringere, bind back or fast
vincīre, bind
dēvincīre, bind fast
ēvincīre, bind round
revincīre, bind back
innectere, bind, fasten round

q.v. whole, part, 17.6

6.4 around and middle

circum, circā *Ac*, around
circum, circā, *adv.*, around
circumiectus, surrounding
circumscribere, enclose (in a circle);
circumscripsiō, circle, outline
cingere, circumplectī, surround; *gladiō*
cingitur, he girds on his sword
circumsistere, circumstāre, stand round

circumīre, go, march around; *noun circuitus*
circumclūdere, circumvenīre, surround,
encompass
circumvehī, ride or sail round; *noun*
circumvectiō
circumequitāre, ride round
circumdare, place round, surround; *c.*
bracchia collō, embrace
circumdūcere, lead around
circumagere, drive round
circumferre, carry round
circumicere, throw round; *noun circumiectus*
circumfundere, pour round
circumflāre, blow round
ambīre, go round, surround; *noun ambitus*
circumfluere, flow round
circumspicere, circumspectāre, look round;
noun circumspectus

q.v. in, 5.2

q.v. circle etc. in 12.1

medius, middle; *in mediō mundō*, in the
centre of the universe; *media pars*, centre

7 LAND

7.1

patria, (native) country
solum, terra, country, region
finis, boundary; **finēs** *P*, territory, frontier;
finibus utī, stay in one's country
cōnfinis, adjoining, neighbouring; *noun*
cōnfinium, boundary
agrī nostrī, our land
indigena, native
barbaria or barbariēs, foreign country;
barbarus, foreign, barbarian, *as noun*
foreigner
prōvincia, province; **prōvinciālēs**, provincials
prōcōnsul, governor
cohors, staff, retinue
colōnia, settlement; *colōniam collocāre*,
dēdūcere, found, plant a colony
colōnus, colonist
regiō, tractus, district
situs, lying, situated; **situs**, situation, site

7.2 country

rūs, country (not town)

rūsticus, rūsticānus, rural
ager, territory, district, domain, field; in
 agris habitāre, live in the country
agrestis, of the country, rustic
campus, field
prātum, meadow; *adj.* **prātēnsis**

7.3 hill and dale

mōns, mountain; *summus m.*, the top of the m.;
 īmus m., the foot of the m.; *sub monte*, at
 the foot of the m.; *sub ipsīs rādīcibus*
 montis, at the very foot of the m.;
 montuōsus, montānus, mountainous
iugum, ridge
prōmunturium, headland, promontory
collis, hill; *adversō colle*, up the hill
tumulus, mound, hillock
agger, mound
mōlēs, mound, mole, massive pile
saxum, rock
scopulus, rock, crag; *adj.* **scopulōsus**
rūpēs, steep rock
cautēs, cōtēs, pointed rock
antrum, caverna, spēlunca, specus, cavern,
 grotto
vallis, valley
convallis, enclosed valley
angustiae, faucēs, saltus, narrow pass, defile
vorāgō, abyss, chasm
scrobis, ditch
arduus, steep, lofty
sublimis, ēminēns, lofty
praeceps, steep, headlong
circumcīsus, steep, sheer
praeruptus, abruptus, abscīsus, steep, rugged
apex, crest, peak
fastigium, summit; slope, descent
dēvexus, sloping, steep
clīvus, slope, ascent
acclīvis, uphill, ascending; *noun* **acclīvitās**
locus ēditus, rising ground; *loca ēdita*,
 uplands
dēclīvis, prōclīvis, sloping down, downhill
ex locō superiōre (īferiōre), from higher
 (lower) ground
dēmissus, dēpressus, humilis, low-lying
ascendere, scandere, climb
attingere, reach
dēscendere, climb down
loca aspera, uneven ground
plānus, aequus, campester, level
aequus locus, aequum, plānum, plānitēs,
 campus, plain

7.4 earth

terra, earth; *t. continēns*, mainland,
 continent; *adjs.* **terrēnus, terrestris**
terrae mōtus, earthquake; **terrae lābēs or**
 lāpsus, landslide
tellūs, earth
humus, ground; *humī*, on the ground
solum, ground
harēna, sand
● **pulvis**, dust; **pulverulentus, poet. pulvereus**,
 dusty
lutum, mud, clay; *adjs.* **luteus, lutulentus**
lapis, stone
asprētum, stony place
saxētum, rocky region
silex, stone, pebble, flint
glārea, gravel; *adj.* **glāreōsus**
glēba, lump of earth, clod
tesca (P), wastes, steppes

7.5

īnsula, island; **īnsulānus**, islander
palūs, stāgnum, marsh, swamp, pool, fen; *adj.*
 palūster, poet. palūdōsus

7.6 transport by land

via, road; *mūnīre viam*, make a r.; *viam*
 sternere, pave a r.; *mūnītiō viārum*, road
 building; *v. fert*, the r. leads; *viam*
 ingredi, īstituere, take a r.
viae transversae, cross-street
compitum, crossroads
trivium, crossroads
trāmes, sēmita, bypath, footpath, lane
callis, (stony, uneven) path, mountain path,
 cattle track

vehiculum, raeda, (four-wheeled) carriage;
 carpentum, (two-wheeled) carriage
raedārius, aurīga, coachman
currus, chariot; *currū vehī*, drive
essedum, war chariot of Gauls and Britons;
 later, travelling carriage
plaustrum, wagon, lorry
carrus, cart (two-wheeled)
cisium, light two-wheeled vehicle
rota, wheel; **axis**, axle-tree
orbita, track (of wheels)
habēnae, reins; **lōra**, reins, whip

frēnum, bridle; *frēnōs dare*, give reins to;
verb frēnāre
lectica, litter, palanquin; *lectica octaphora*,
or octaphoron, litter carried by eight
ferculum, bier, litter
sella, sedan chair
iter, journey; *sē itinerī committere*, *iter*
instituire, set out on a journey; *i.*
habēre ad, make one's way to
impeditus (e.g. *locus*), difficult of passage
invius, impassable, pathless
obsaepire, render impassable
dēsertus, desolate

dēverticulum, **iter dēvium**, bypath, byway
limes, cross-path
oblīquō itinere, by a side road
via compendiāria, short cut
circuitus, **ānfractus**, round-about way
dē viā dēflectere, stray from the road

in equō vehī, **equitāre**, ride
equum cōscendere, mount horse; **equō**
dēscendere, dismount
equō citātō, **concitātō** *or* **admissō**, at full
gallop
calcar, spur; *equō calcāria subdere*,
equum calcāribus concitāre, spur on

q.v. travel, 4.4

q.v. transport by water, 9.3, 9.4

8 FARMING

agrī cultūra, **arātiō**, agriculture
opera rūstica, farm work, agriculture
praedium, farm
fundus, **rūs**, farm, country estate
vīlla, country house, farm; *diminutive vīllula*
familia rūstica, farm hands
vīlicus, bailiff, overseer

8.1

colere, cultivate; *nouns cultor terrae*, farmer;
cultus, tilling
● **agricola**, **colōnus**, husbandman, farmer,
peasant

agrestis, peasant, farmer
rūsticus, **rūsticānus**, peasant
ager, **seges**, field
iūgerum, (2/3 English) acre
fertilis, **pinguis**, **ūber**, **ferāx**, **frūgibus fētus**,
opīmus, **fēcundus**, fertile; *nouns fertilitās*,
ūbertās, **fēcunditās**
sterilis, barren; *noun sterilitās*
macer, meagre, lean
āridus, dry
arātrum, plough; **vōmer**, ploughshare;
dentālia, sharebeam; *verb arāre*, **exarāre**;
arātor, **bubulcus**, ploughman, farmer
armenta P, cattle for ploughing, herd; **iugum**,
yoke (of oxen), team; **stimulus**, goad
arvum, ploughed land
sulcus, furrow
occāre, harrow
rāstrum, rake, mattock
dolābra, mattock, pickaxe

8.2

serere, **obserere**, sow, plant; **sator**, sower
sēmen, seed; *s. spargere*, sow seed
grānum, grain, seed
messis, harvest; *messem facere*, reap; **metere**,
dēmetere, mow, reap; **messor**, reaper
seges, crop
annōna, yearly produce (of grain)
trīticum, wheat; **avēna**, oats; **hordeum**, barley
spīca, **spīcum**, **arista**, ear of corn
lolium, tares
terere, thresh; **ārea**, threshing-floor
horreum, barn; **grānārium**, granary
acervus, heap
molere, grind; **pīstor**, miller (also baker);
pīstrinum, **molae**, mill; **mola**, millstone
farīna, flour
palea, chaff
strāmentum, straw, litter

8.3

pecus (n -oris), herd, cattle
pecus (f -udis), head of cattle, beast
pecuāria, breeding of cattle; **pecuārius**, cattle-
breeder; **pecuāria (P)**, herds of cattle
● **bōs**, ox, cow; *adj. boārius*, **bovillus**;
iuvencus, bullock, ox; **iuvenca**, **būcula**,
heifer; **taurus**, bull; **vacca**, cow; **vitulus**,
calf (**vitulīna**, veal)
lac, milk; *adj. lacteus*; **cāseus**, cheese
subulcus, swineherd
perna, ham

lārdum, bacon
hara, pigsty
mūgīre, low, bellow; *noun* **mūgītus**
praesēpe, stable, stall, pen
stabulum, stable
būbile, stall for oxen
saepum, saepīmentum, fence

8.4

grex, flock; **ovīle**, sheepfold
ovīs, sheep; **āgnus**, lamb; **āgna**, ewe lamb
ōpiliō, shepherd
lāna, wool; *adj.* **lāneus**; **vellus**, fleece
ariēs, ram
vervēx, wether
caper, f. capra, goat; **hircus**, he-goat; **haedus**,
kid
porcus, pig; **verrēs**, male swine; **porca**, sow,
adj. **porcīnus**; **porcīna f.** pork

q.v. domestic quadrupeds, 21.2

q.v. domestic birds, 21.5

8.5

pascere, pasture, feed; **pāstus**, feeding; fodder;
pasture; **vēscī**, feed on; **pāscua**, pasture
sagīna, feeding, fodder, fatted animal; *verb*
sagīnāre
pāstor, herdsman; *adjs.* **pāstōrālis**,
pāstōricius
grāmen, grass, pasture; *adj.* **grāmineus**
prātum, meadow; **fēnum**, hay
falx, sickle
fēnīlia, hayloft


9 SEA, RIVER, ETC.

9.1

mare, sea
aequor, *poet.* **pontus** and **pelagus n.** sea
marīnus, marītimus, of the sea;
trānsmarīnus, across the sea
altum, high sea, deep; in a. **prōvehī**, sail
out to sea
Ōceanus, ocean
ōra, coast
lītus, shore
acta, beach
aestus, tide, surge

unda, flūctus, wave; **flūctuāre**, wave,
undulate
salum, movement of sea; s. **aerumnōsum**, sea
of troubles
gurges, vorāgō, whirlpool
vertex, *older vortex*, eddy; *adj.* **vorticōsus**
spūma, foam; *verb* **spūmāre**, foam, cover with
foam; *adjs.* **spūmeus, spūmōsus**
aqua, water; *adjs.* **aquārius**, water-; **aquōsus**,
rainy, moist; **aquātilis**, living in water;
aquārī, fetch water; *nouns* **aquātīō**,
aquātor
āridus, siccus, dry; **ārēre**, be dry; **siccāre**,
exārēscere, dry up
ūmidus, moist; *noun* **ūmor**; **ūvidus**, *poet.*,
soaked; **madīdus**, dripping; **madēre**, drip
mānāre, drip, flow
rōrāre, drip, trickle
stīllāre, drip, let drip
imbuere, madefacere, perfundere, wet
(*trans.*)
irrigāre, water, irrigate; *noun* **irrigātīō**
alluere, wash, bathe
inundāre, inundate, overflow; *noun* **inundātīō**
ēluviō, inundation
vapor, steam; *verb* **vapōrāre**

9.2

 **flūmen**, stream; **flūmine adversō**, up-stream;
flūmine secundō, down-stream; **pedibus**
f. trānsīre, ford a s.; *adj.* **flūmineus**,
poet.
amnis, fluvius, river; *adjs.* **fluviātīlis, fluviālis**
canālis, canal, channel
fluere, flow; **dēfluere**, flow down or towards
confluēns, confluence of two rivers
pōns, bridge; **pontem in flūmine facere**,
throw a b. over a river; **pontem**
interrumpere, rescindere *or*
interscindere, break down b.
rīvus, brook, stream; *diminutive* **rīvulus**
torrēns, torrent
fōns, spring, fountain; *diminutive* **fonticulus**
salientēs, fountains, springs
caput, source (*rarely* mouth) of river
vadum, shallow water, shoal, ford; **flūmen**
vadō trānsīre, ford a river; *adj.* **vadōsus**,
shallow
rīpa, bank; *diminutive* **rīpula**
sinus, bay
aestuārium, estuary
fretum, eurīpus, strait, channel
lacus, lake, pond
puteus, well; **puteal**, curb of well

haurīre, draw (water); *noun* **haustus**
exhaurīre, draw out, drain off

9.3 transport by water

rēs nauticae, naval matters
nāvis, **nāvigium**, ship; *dim.* **nāvicula**
nāvis onerāria, merchant vessel, transport
lembus, yacht, cutter; **āctuāria**, **celōx**, swift sailing vessel, cutter; **phasēlus**, light vessel; **scapha**, boat; **linter**, row-boat; **ratis**, raft, pontoon
rēmūs, oar; **rēmīs** *incumbere*, *nāvem rēmīs prōpellere*, row; **rēmīs concitāre**, *incitāre nāvēs rēmīs*, row hard
rēmex, rower; **rēmigium**, rowing, oars, oarsmen; **rēmigāre**, row
scalmus, rowlock
trānstrum, bench for rowers
birēmīs, **trirēmīs**, **quadrirēmīs**, vessels with two, three, four banks of oars
cōnscēnsiō in nāvēs, embarkation
ēgressus, **ēscēnsiō**, landing (from ship)
portus, harbour, haven; *portum petere*, *capere*, make land; *in portum venire*, enter h.; *in portum pervenire* *or* *sē recipere* *or* *portum tenēre*, reach h.; *in portū stāre*, ride at anchor
mōlēs, mole
iactārī tempestāte, be tossed about by storm
nāvis afflīcta *or* **afflīctāta**, damaged ship
naufragium, shipwreck; *n. facere*, be shipwrecked; *naufragiō perire* *or* *interire*, be lost in s.; **nāvis frangitur** *or* **dēperit**, ship founders; **naufragus**, **ēiectus in lītus** *or* **in lītore**, shipwrecked

9.4 navigation

ars gubernandī, navigation
nāvigāre, sail, navigate; *noun* **nāvigātiō**, voyage, travelling by sea
ēvehī, **in altum prōvehī**, put or sail out to sea
ōram legere, sail along the coast
applicāre (sc. nāvem) ad terram, steer to shore
dēferrī, **fluitāre**, drift
nauarchus, captain of ship
nauta, *poet.* **nāvita**, sailor
homō marītimus, seaman
gubernātor, pilot, mate, helmsman; **gubernāre**, steer; **gubernāculum**, helm
mālus, mast
vēlum, **lintheum**, sail; *vēla dare*, *pandere*, set sail; *vēla contrahere*, reef sails

armāmenta *P*, tackle, rigging; **fūnis**, rope; **ancorāle**, cable
prōra, prow; **rōstrum**, beak, ram
alveus, hull of ship
carīna, keel; *poet.* ship
puppis, poop, stern (*also* ship)
ancora, anchor; *ancoram iacere*, cast a.; a. *tollere* *or* *mōliri*, weigh a., set sail; *stāre* *or* *cōnsistere in ancorīs*, ride at a.

9.5 fleet

classis, fleet; *classem instruere*, draw up f.; *classī pūgnāre*, fight a naval battle; *adj.*
classicus; **nāvis longa**, man-of-war
nāvibus plūrimum posse, have a powerful fleet
praefectus classis, commander, admiral; **nāvis praetōria**, flagship
classicī milītēs, **classiārīi**, marines
milītēs in nāvēs impōnere, put s. on board, embark s.; *m. (ex nāvibus) expōnere (in terram, in terrā, in lītora)*, land or disembark soldiers
proelium nāvāle, **pūgna nāvālis**, sea fight
nāvem expeditē, clear the decks for action
classēs concurrunt, the fleets charge;
concurus, collision, shock
manūs ferreae, **cōpulae**, **harpagō**, grappling irons
in nāvem trāscendere, **nāvem expūgnāre**, board a ship
nāvem rōstrō percutere, ram a ship
nāvem dēmergere, **submergere**, **dēprimere**, sink a ship; *usu. in past part. submersus*; **sē mergere** *or* **mergī**, sink (*intrans.*)
nāvem in lītus agere, drive a ship on shore

q.v. transport by water, 9.3, 9.4

9.6 clean/unclean

clean, pure
pūrus, clean, spotless
mundus, clean, neat
incorruptus, **integer**, unspoilt, pure; *noun* **integritās**
lavāre, wash; **lābrum**, bath
tergēre, wipe, clean
mantēle, towel
pūrgāre, **expūrgāre**, clean, purify

unclean, soil

immundus, impūrus, spurcus, unclean; *noun* **impūritās**; *verb* **spurcāre**, defile
luteus, lutulentus, filthy
lutum, mud; **līmus**, slime, mire; *adj.* **limōsus**;
caenum, mire, filth; **illuviēs**, dirt, filth
macula, stain, blemish; *verb* **maculāre**; *adj.*
maculōsus
situs, dirt, mould, rust
sordēre, be dirty; *noun* **sordēs**; *adj.* **sordidus**
squālere, be dirty; *noun* **squālor**; *adj.*
squālidus
contāmināre, inquināre, oblinere, polluere,
turpāre, defile, soil, besmirch
imbuere, taint
īficere, spoil, infect
contāctus, defiled, infected
dēprāvāre, pervert, corrupt; *noun* **dēprāvātīō**

9.7 liquid, oily

liquēre, be liquid; *noun* **liquor**; **liquidus**,
liquid, clear; **liquefacere**, melt; **liquēscere**,
grow liquid, melt
fluere, flow; **cōfluere**, flow together;
dēfluere, flow down; **effluere**, flow forth
fundere, pour; **cōfundere**, pour together;
diffundere, pour out or forth; **effundere**,
pour forth
oleum, oil; *adj.* **oleārius**
lūbricus, slippery
linere, oblinere, smear
ung(u)ere, anoint, smear; **unguentum**,
ointment, salve; **ūnctīō**, anointing; **ūnctor**,
anointer
dēlibūtus, smeared, anointed
gutta, drop (thin and clear); **stilla**, drop (thick
and viscous)

q.v. wet, drip, 9.1

10 SKY

10 sky

aethēr, (pure upper) air, ether; *adj.* **aetherius**;
āēr, (lower) air
anima, air (as element)
aura, air; *P poet.*, sky
caelum, heaven, sky; *serēnum c.*, clear sky;
caelestis, heavenly, of the sky
sub dīvō, under the open sky
caelestia P, heavenly bodies

stēlla, *poet.* **astrum**, star; **stēlla errāns** *or*
inerrāns, planet; **sphaera**, orbit of planet;
traiectiō stēllae, shooting star; **stēllāns**,
stēllātus, starry
sīdus, star, constellation; *adj.* **sīdereus**
signum, constellation
lūna, moon; 1. **plēna**, full m.; 1. **nova**, new
m.; **dēfectiō lūnae**, eclipse of the m.;
dēfectus lūnae, waning of m.; *adjs.*
lūnāris, moon-, **lūnātus**, crescent-shaped
vesper, evening star
lūcifer m G -erī, morning star
comētēs, comet; **crīnis**, tail of comet; **fax**
caelestis *or* **caelī**, meteor
caelī interpres, astronomer
mōtūs stēllārum observāre, observe the
movements of the stars
sōl, sun, heat of sun; **lūx, lūx sōlis, or sōl**,
sunlight; **obscurātiō** *or* **dēfectiō sōlis**,
eclipse of the sun
calor, warmth; *adj.* **calidus**; *verbs* **calēre**, be
hot; **calefacere**, make hot
ārdor, heat; *verb* **ārdēre**
aestus, heat, glow; *adj.* **aestuōsus**; *verb*
aestuāre
orīrī, rise; **sōl oriēns** *or* **sōlis ortus**, sunrise
occidere, set; **sōl occidēns** *or* **sōlis occāsus**,
sunset
obitus, setting (of heavenly bodies)
aprīcus, sunny; **aprīcārī**, take the sun, bask
obscurus, opācus, dark, dusky, shady;
obscurum, darkness, shade; **opācare**, cast
shade on

q.v. heat, 15; light, 16

11 SEASONS, WINDS, WEATHER

11.1 season

vēr, spring; *adj.* **vernus**
aestās, summer; a. **media**, mid-summer;
summā aestāte, at the height of summer;
adj. **aestīvus**; **aestīva tempora**, summer
time
autumnus, autumn; *adj.* **autumnālis**
hiemps, winter; **initā hieme**, at the beginning
of w.; **summā hieme**, in the depth of w.;
ante exāctam hiemem, before the end of
w.; **iam prope hieme cōfectā**, when w.
was nearly over; *adj.* **hibernus**

11.2 winds

ventus, wind; *v.* *secundus*, favourable w.; *v.* *adversus*, unfavourable w.; *v.* *remissus*, gentle w.; *vis ventōrum*, fierce wind; *adj.* **ventōsus**

anima, aura, breeze

etēsiae, winds, during dog-days

flāre, blow; *noun flātus*, blast, wind

septentrionēs ventī, septentriō, north wind

boreās, north-east wind

aquilō, north wind (strictly NNE.)

caurus or cōrus, north-west wind

auster, poet. notus, south wind; **austrālis**, southern

eurus, south-east wind; **eurōus**, eastern

vulturnus ventus, ESE. wind

favōnius, poet. zephyrus, west wind

11.3 weather

caelum, climate, weather; *temperātiō caeli*, moderate climate

tempestās, weather; *t. bona, ēgregia, serēna, serēnitās caeli*, fine weather; *t. turbida, turbulenta*, rough, stormy weather; **commūtātiō caeli**, change of weather

sūdam, bright weather

tranquillitās, tranquillum, calmness, calm

malacia, calm (at sea)

nūbēs, nimbus, cloud; *diminutive nūbēcula*; *adj. nūbilus*

nūbila P, clouds

nebula, mist, fog

cālīgō, dense fog; *adj. cāliginōsus*

pluvia, rain; **imber**, heavy rain; *assidui*

imbrēs, steady downpour; **pluit**, it rains;

pluvius, pluviālis, rainy; *aquae pluviae*, rainwater

q.v. wet, 9.1

tempestās, procella, turbō, storm; *tempestās cooritur*, a s. rises

imprōvīsus, unforeseen

subitus, sudden

arcus (pluvius), rainbow

rōs, dew; *rōrēs*, dewdrops; *adj. rōscidus*;

rōrāre, drop dew

ningit, it snows; **nix**, snow; *adjs. niveus,*

nivālis

pruīna, hoar-frost

grandō, hail, hailstorm

frīgus, gelū, frost, cold; *vis frīgoris*, keen frost; **frīgēre**, freeze; *adjs. frīgīdus, gelīdus*

glaciēs, ice; *adj. glaciālis*

stīria, icicle

gelāre, glaciāre, freeze (*trans.*); *impers. gelat*, it freezes

tonat, it thunders; *noun tonitrus or tonitrum*

fulgur, lightning; *verb fulgēre*

fulmen, thunderbolt, flash

ictus ē caelō, dē caelō percussus, fulmine or dē caelō tāctus, struck by lightning

12-20 PHYSICAL PROPERTIES

q.v. sound, 13; sight, 14; heat, 15; light, 16; size, 17; weight, 19

12.1 shape and consistency

fōrma, figūra, speciēs, shape; *verbs fōrmāre, fingere, figurāre, cōnfōrmāre, infōrmāre*

cōnfōrmātiō, shaping

multifōrmis, of many shapes

infōrmis, shapeless, misshapen

dēfōrmis, prāvus, distortus, misshapen, deformed; *nouns dēfōrmitās, prāvitās; verb dēfōrmāre*

longus, long; *noun longitūdō*

brevis, short; *noun brevitās*

q.v. high, low, 5.4

lātus, amplus, capāx, wide; *nouns lātītūdō, amplitūdō*

angustus, artus, narrow; **coartāre**, compress

q.v. large, small, 17.1

crassus, thick, coarse; *noun crassītūdō*

tenuis, thin; *noun tenuitās; verb extenuāre*

dēnsus, spissus, thick, dense; *verb spissāre*

rārus, of loose texture, thin; *noun rāritās*

rēctus, dērēctus, straight; *adv. rēctā (sc. viā)*, straight on, directly; **linea**, line;

perpendicularum, plumb-line; *ad p.*, perpendicularly

prāvus, curvus, incurvus, crooked; *noun*

prāvitās; verbs curvāre, incurvāre

aduncus, hooked

cavus, concavus, hollow, concave; *verb cavāre*

convexus, rounded, convex, concave

quadrātus, square; *noun quadrātum*
rotundus, teres, round
circulus, circle
orbis, anything round (circle, etc.)
gyrus, circle
globus, ball; *adj. globōsus*
centrum, media pars, centre
radius, radius (of circle)
circinus, pair of compasses
acūtus, sharp; *verb acuere*
hebes, retūsus, blunt; *verbs hebēre*, be blunt;
hebetāre, retundere, blunt

senses

sēnsus, sense, sensation, feeling; **ea quae subiecta sunt sēnsibus**, what can be perceived by the senses
sentīre, feel, perceive, be sensible of

12.2 touch

tāctus, sense of touch, act of touching
tangere, contingere, tractāre, attrectāre, contrectāre, touch; **pertractāre**, feel all over; *noun tractātiō*, touching; *adj. tractābilis*
dūrus, hard; *noun dūritia*; *verbs dūrāre, obdūrēscere*
mollis, soft; *noun mollitia, mollitiēs*; *verb mollīre*, soften; **mollēscere**, grow soft
tener, tender, soft; *noun teneritās*
solidus, firm, hard; **solidum**, firmness
fīrmus, firm; *nouns fīrmitās, fīrmitūdō*
rigidus, stiff; **rigēre**, be stiff; **rigēscere**, become stiff
flaccidus, fluidus, flabby
asper, rough; *noun asperitās*; *verb exasperāre*
horridus, rough, prickly
lēvis, smooth; *noun lēvitās*

touch lightly, touch upon

tangere, touch upon, refer to
rādere, touch, graze, pass close by
Actg orātiōne percurrere, touch upon
stringere, touch lightly; **strictim**, superficially, summarily
perstringere, trānsīre, touch upon

12.3 smell

odōrātus, sense of smell, act of smelling
odor, smell (good or bad); o. *suāvis, or iūcundus*, fragrance, scent; o. *taeter or gravis, or fētor*, bad smell; *adj. fētidus*

olēre, redolēre, smell of; *nihil olēre*, have no smell; **olfacere**, smell, follow a scent
nīdor, smell (of things burnt, singed, cooked)
pūtēre, stink

12.4 taste

gustātus, sense of taste
sapor, taste, flavour; *sine sapōre*, tasteless
gustāre, taste; *primis labris g.*, get a slight taste of; **sapere**, have a taste
dulcis, suāvis, sweet, agreeable; *nouns dulcēdō, dulcitūdō*
palātō iūcundus, toothsome, palatable
acerbus, harsh, sour; *intensive peracerbus*; *noun acerbitās*
acidus, sour, tart; **acēscere**, grow sour; **salsus**, salt (*adj.*); **amārus**, bitter

13 SOUND

13.1

sēnsus aurium, (sense of) hearing
sonus, sonitus, sound; *sonum percipere*, hear a s.; *sonōs fundere*, utter s.; *verb sonāre*, emit a s., utter, call, sing, cause to s.; **personāre**, resound, ring with, echo with; **resonāre**, resound, re-echo
clārus, loud, distinct; *noun clāritās*
argūtus, shrill, distinct, murmuring, rattling, etc.
acūtus, high; **gravis**, low
tacitus, silēns, noiseless, silent
clangor, noise (espec. of birds)
strepitus, din; *verb strepere*
strīdor, harsh sound; *verb strīdēre, strīdere*, hiss, creak, rattle, buzz
crepitus, rattling, etc., sound; *verb crepāre, crepitāre, increpāre*
tinnīre, clink, jingle; **tintinnābulum**, bell
sībilus, whistling; *verb sībilāre*
fremitus, roaring sound; *verb fremere*
fragor, crash, din
mūgītus, roaring, crashing sound; *verb mūgīre*
murmur, humming, roaring, growling sound; *verb murmurāre*
gemitus, sigh, groan, moan; *verb gemere, ingemīscere*
gemere, also roar, creak

q.v. voice, speech, 41

auditus, sense of hearing; *verb* **audire**,
exaudire
auribus percipere, hear
aurem or aurēs admovēre *D*, *or aurēs*
praebēre, lend an ear
auscultāre, listen

13.2 music

mūsica, mūsicē, mūsica *P*, music; *adj.*
mūsicus, *as noun*, musician
modus, melody, harmony, rhythm; *espec. in P*,
tune, strain
numerus, musical measure, harmony;
numerōsus, rhythmical
harmonia, harmony
canōrus, melodious, sweet-sounding
absonus, discordant
tībia, flute; **tībīcen** (*m*), **tībīcina** (*f*), flute-
player
cithara, lute; **fidēs** (*P*), **lyra**, lute, lyre;
fidibus discere, docēre, learn, teach the
l.; *fidibus canere*, play the l.; **fidicen**,
lute-player
psallere, play on the cithara
plectrum, quill
fistula, reed pipe
cymbalum, cymbal
tympanum, tambourine
tuba, (straight) trumpet; **tubīcen**, trumpeter
būcina, cornū, (curved) trumpet; **cornicen**,
horn-blower
lituus, curved trumpet (of cavalry); **liticen**,
trumpeter
classicum, trumpet signal

q.v. song, 41.13

14 SIGHT

14.1

sēnsus videndī or oculōrum, aspectus, (sense
of) sight
vīsus, sight, vision; look, glance
vidēre, see; *bene oculīs v.*, have good sight;
ācrius v., have keen sight; **cernere**, see
(distinctly); *parum acūtē c.*, have poor
sight
oculī ācrēs atque acūtī, keen sight; **aciēs**,
sharpness of sight
cōspicere, dispicere, cōspicārī, oculīs
percipere, see, behold; **cōspectus**, view,

range of sight, attention; *venire in*
cōspectum, come into sight; *ē cōspectū*
abire, go out of sight; **cōspiciuus**, visible
prōspicere, prōspectāre, look out; *longē or*
multum prōspicere, have an extensive
prospect; **prōspectus**, view, prospect, sight
spectāre, see (as a spectator), gaze at;
spectāculum, spectacle, sight, show; *Dpn*
s. praebēre, s. (or spectāculō) esse,
present a sight; **spectātor**, onlooker,
witness; **speculāre**, look round, spy out,
watch
aspicere, respicere, vīserē, look at, regard;
nouns aspectus, look, appearance, sight;
quae sub aspectum veniunt or cadunt,
all things visible; **respectus**, looking back or
about
tuērī, look at, watch
intuērī, contuērī, look at or towards, consider;
rēctīs oculīs intuērī, look at with
unyielding glance
obtūtus, contemplation, look
contemplārī, view attentively, survey; *noun*
contemplātiō
aspectāre, look at intently
intrōspicere, perspicere, īnspectāre, look on,
examine, inspect, consider
collūstrāre, look at from all sides
oculum (or oculōs) adicere *D or ad Ac*, turn
the eyes to, contemplate
oculōs in Ac dēfigere, fix one's eyes on
oculōs in Ac conicere, look at

14.2 in/out of sight

in sight; display, search for, find

praesēns, present
cōram, palam, openly; *cōram adesse*, be
present; *cōram with Ab*, in the presence of
īnspectantibus nōbīs, before our eyes
vulgō, openly, publicly, before all the world
in medium venire or prōcēdere, prōcēdere
in sōlem et pulverem, appear in public
habitāre oculīs, vīvere in oculīs civium, be in
the public eye
in ōre omnium cottīdiē versārī, be always in
the public eye
haerēre in oculīs, be ever before the eyes
scaenae servīre, live in the public eye

patēre, stand, lie, be open
exhibēre, mōnstrāre, ostendere, ostentāre,
explicāre, exprōmere, indicāre, ante

oculōs or **in oculis pōnere**, **praeferre**,
prōdere, show, display
prae sē ferre or **gerere** *Actg.*, manifest,
display
repraesentāre, show, display, represent
patefacere, **reclūdere**, **in aspectum lūcemque**
prōferre, **prōmere**, **dētegere**, **retegere**,
reveal, throw open, disclose, bring to light;
noun **patefactiō**
appārēre, **compārēre**, **sē offerre** *Dpn*, **in**
medium prōcedere, **prōdire**, appear
dīlūcēre, **ēlūcēre**, be clear
aperīre, open, reveal; **apertus**, open,
uncovered
quaerere, **conquīrere**, **exquīrere**, **inquīrere**,
requīrere, **petere**, seek, search for;
perquīrere, **petessere**, search keenly for;
nouns **conquīsitiō**, **inquīsitiō**
explōrāre, try to find out
scrūtārī, look through, examine
vestigāre, track, seek out
repetere, seek again
invenīre, **reperīre**, find; **inventiō**, invention
recuperāre, recover; *noun* **recuperātiō**

out of sight: hide, lose

absēns, absent
clam, **clanculum**, secretly; *with Ab*, without
the knowledge of, unknown to
fūrtim, stealthily
latēre, **latitāre**, lie hid; *noun* **latibulum**,
latebrae, hiding-place; **latebrōsus**, full of
hiding-places
dēlitēscere, hide (*intrans.*)
cēlāre, **dissimulāre**, **occulere**, **abdere**,
abstrūdere, **contegere**, **obtegere**, hide
(*trans.*); *noun* **occultum**, hiding-place
recondere, stow away, hide, conceal
abscondere, put out of the way, hide
(carefully)
fūrārī, remove secretly
operīre, **tegere**, **prōtegere**, cover, keep secret;
cooperīre, cover completely
rēs opertae, secrets
integumentum, cover, cloak
vēlāre, veil, conceal
abditus, **abstrūsus**, **clandestīnus**, **fūrtīvus**,
occultus, concealed, secret
reconditus, hidden, sequestered, abstruse
sēcrētus, remote, secret; *noun* **sēcrētum**,
solitude; secret
recessus, **sēcessus**, hidden place, retreat
ēvānēscere, disappear
remōtus, distant, remote
arcānus, hidden, secret; *noun* **arcānum**, secret

āmittere, lose; *noun* **āmissiō**
perdere, **dēperdere**, lose (through my fault)

14.3 beautiful/ugly

beautiful, charming

pulcher, beautiful, fine; *noun* **pulchritūdō**
fōrma, (personal) beauty; *adj.* **fōrmōsus**, *noun*
fōrmōsitās
speciēs, beauty; *adj.* **speciōsus**
nītēns, brilliant, beautiful
candidus, fair; *noun* **candor**
venustus, comely, charming, winsome,
graceful; *noun* **venustās**
concinnus, pretty, dainty, graceful
dulcis, **blandus**, pleasant, charming; **dulcēdō**,
charm; **blandior**, allure, attract
lepor, charm, agreeableness; *adj.* **lepidus**, of
charming manners, graceful
bellus, pretty, charming, elegant
aureolus, **dēlicātus**, charming, delightful
exquīsītus, choice, excellent
amoenus, lovely, delightful, picturesque
(espec. of scenery, e.g. *loca amoena*); *noun*
amoenitās
laetus, delightful, pleasing
ōrnāre, **adōrnāre**, **exōrnāre**, **decorāre**,
expolīre, **illūmināre**, **polīre**, adorn,
embellish; *nouns* **ōrnāmentum**, ornament;
ōrnātus, ornament (collective); **exōrnātiō**,
decus, ornament, embellishment; **expolītiō**,
embellishing
commendāre, make agreeable, grace; *noun*
commendātiō

ugly

dēfōrmis, ugly; *noun* **dēfōrmitās**
īnfōrmis, hideous
taeter, revolting
turpis, ugly, foul
foedus, disgusting, loathsome; *noun* **foeditās**
obscēnus, ugly, filthy
squālidus, dirty, ugly
dēfōrmāre, disfigure, mar
foedāre, make foul, defile, pollute
commaculāre, soil, defile
inquīnāre, soil, stain, besmirch
īnfuscāre, disfigure

14.4 colour

color, colour; *verb* **colōrāre**

pīgmentum, colour, paint

pingere, paint; **pictor**, painter; **pictūra**, (art
of) painting, picture; **tabula (picta)**, picture

tingere, inficere, sufficere, dye; **infector**, dyer
fucāre, dye, paint; **fucātus, fucōsus**, painted
suffundere, tinge, colour
albus, (dull) white; **candidus, candēns**,
 (glossy) white; *verbs* **albēre**, be white;
albēscere, become white
nivālis, niveus, snow-white
candor, whiteness
āter, (dull) black; **niger**, (glossy) black
caeruleus, *poet.* **caerulus**, azure, dark-blue
caesius, glaucus, bluish grey
lividus, bluish, of leaden colour
ruber, rūfus, red; *noun* **rubor**; **pūniceus**
 scarlet
ferrūgō, dark-red colour
fūcus, red or purple colour
purpura, crimson (colour); *adj.* **purpureus**,
 crimson, reddish, brownish
viola, violet colour
spādix, chestnut brown
roseus, rose-coloured, rosy
viridis, green; *verb* **virēre**, be green
rutilus, red, golden yellow; *verb* **rutilāre**
flāvus, *poet.* **flāvēns**, (golden) yellow
lūteus, croceus, saffron yellow, golden yellow
lūridus, gilvus, pale yellow
fulvus, (deep) yellow, tawny
rāvus, greyish yellow, tawny
fuscus, dark, tawny
pullus, dark grey, blackish
discolor, of different colour(s)
varius, versicolor, many-coloured; *noun*
varietās

q.v. colours of charioteers, 35.5

15 HEAT

calor, heat; *adj.* **calidus**; *verb* **calēre**, be hot;
calefacere, make hot; **calēscere**, grow hot;
concalefacere, heat thoroughly;
concalēscere, grow thoroughly hot;
recalēscere, grow hot again
candēre, glow
ārdor, (burning) heat; *verb* **ārdēre**, be on fire
fervor, (glowing) heat; *adj.* **fervēns, fervidus**;
verb **fervēre**
aestus, (excessive) heat; *adj.* **aestuōsus**; *verb*
aestuāre, feel hot
tepor, lukewarmness; *adj.* **tepidus**; **tepēre**, be
 lukewarm
tepefacere, make warm; **tepēscere**, become
 warm
flābellum, fan

frīgus, gelū, cold; **frīgidus**, cold; **gelidus**, (icy)
 cold; *verb* **frīgēre**, be cold; **refrigerāre**,
 grow cold, cool; **gelāre, congelāre**, freeze
 (*trans.*)
algēre, feel cold; *noun* **algor**
īgnis, fire; **īgniculus**, little fire, spark; *adj.*
īgneus
flamma, flame; *adj.* **flammeus**; **scintilla**,
 spark; **fūmus**, smoke; *verb* **fūmāre**; *adj.*
fūmidus, fūmōsus; **cinis**, ashes; **favilla**,
 glowing ashes, hot cinders; **fūligō**, soot
focus, hearth
fornāx, stove
camīnus, stove, fire
accendere, incendere, inflammāre, set on
 fire, light; **incēnsiō, inflammātiō**, burning
succendere, light from below
incendium, fire, conflagration; *i. facere*, set
 fire
cōnflagrāre, be burnt up; *noun* **cōnflagrātiō**
tēctīs īgnēs īferre, set fire to houses
īgnem comprehendere, flammam concipere,
 catch fire
ūrere, burn, scorch, parch (*trans.*); **adūrere**,
 burn, singe; **ambūrere**, scorch, singe;
combūrere, dēūrere, exūrere, or perūrere,
 burn up, consume; *noun* **exūstiō**
effervēscere, refervēre, refervēscere, boil up
flagrāre, blaze; *noun* **flagrantia**; **exārdēscere**,
 blaze up
torrēre, dry, parch
exstinguere, restinguere, put out; *noun*
restinctiō

16 LIGHT

lūmen, lūx, light; *adhibēre* *l.* *Dtg.*, throw
 light on; *adjs.* **lūminōsus, lūcidus**,
dīlūcidus; *verbs* **illūmināre**, light; **lūcēre**,
 shine
radius, ray, beam; **radiātus**, beaming
clārus, illūstris, bright; *verbs* **clārēre**, be
 bright; **clārāre, illūstrāre**, make bright
splendor, nitor, brightness; *adj.* **splendidus**,
nitidus, shining, bright; *verbs* **splendēre**,
nitēre and **splendēscere**, become bright
collūcēre, shine brightly (*also* be lit up)
ēnitēre, shine forth
fulgēre, flash, gleam; **micāre**, glitter, flash
candēre, shine, glisten
obscurus, dark; *noun* **obscurum**; *verb*
obscurāre
opācus, dark, shady; *verb* **opācāre**
umbra, shade; *verb* **obumbrāre**; *adjs.*
umbrifer, umbrōsus, umbrātilis

tenebrae, darkness; *adj.* **tenebricosus**; **cāligō**, gloom, darkness
lucerna, lūmen, oil lamp
lanterna, lantern, lamp
lychnus, lamp; **lychnūchus**, lampstand
taeda, fax, lampas, torch
fūnāle, wax torch

q.v. sunlight, 10

17-20 SIZE AND QUANTITY

q.v. shape, 12.1

17.0

quantus? how great?; **tantus**, so great
spatium, size, bulk, extent
modus, size, quantity
tantus... quantus..., as great... as...

17.1 large/small

large

māgnus, great, large; *adv.* **māgnopere**; *noun* **māgnitūdō**
māgnam partem, in great part
grandis, large; **subgrandis**, rather large
amplus, great, large, wide, spacious;
amplitūdō, extent, size
quantuscumque, however great
quantusvīs, as large as you like
laxus, spatiōsus, spacious, roomy; *noun* **laxitās**
immodicus, immoderate
immānis, immēnsus, ingēns, vāstus, ēnōrmis, huge; *nouns* **immānitās, immēnsitās**

small

parvus, small; *adv.* **paulum**, slightly;
diminutive **parvulus**
mediocris, middling, ordinary; *noun* **mediocritās**
modicus, of a moderate or reasonable size;
middling, scanty, small
aliquantus, somewhat, tolerable, not a little
minūtus, small, minute
exiguus, very small, tiny, scanty, trifling; *noun* **exiguitās**
nūgātōrius, trifling, futile

rēs parva or levis or minūta, trifle;
indīduum, atom
exilis, small, weak, feeble; *noun* **exilitās**
pusillus, very small, petty, insignificant
tantulus, so trifling, insignificant; *noun* **tantulum**
nē pilō quidem minus, not a hair's breadth less

17.2 larger/smaller

larger and largest

māior, larger; **nihilō m.**, no greater; **māior** (*or māgna*) **pars**, majority; *adv.* **magis māiōrem in modum**, in a higher degree
augēre, make larger, increase
addere, adicere, adiungere, add; *noun* **adiectiō**
aggregāre, add, join with
exaggerāre, amplificāre, increase, amplify;
nouns **amplificātiō, amplificātor**
crēscere, grow; *noun* **incrēmentum**
gliscere, grow gradually
anteire Ac or D, antecēdere Ac or D, antecellere D, excellere Dp, exsuperāre Ac, praecēdere Ac, praecellere Ac, praecurrere Ac, praestāre D, superāre Ac, vincere, surpass, excel
přimārius, chief, excellent
přincipālis, chief
praecipuus, excellent, extraordinary
māximus, largest; *adv.* **māximē**
māximam partem, for the most part
suprēmus, greatest, extreme

smaller and smallest

minor, smaller; *adv.* **minus**
minuere, dēminuere, imminuere, extenuāre, make smaller, lessen; *noun* **imminūtiō**
coartāre, compress, contract
dēcrēscere, minor fierī, minuī, grow smaller, decrease
circumcēdere, reduce
redigere ex Ab ad Ac, reduce
dēterere, wear down, reduce
attenuāre, diminish, reduce
minuere, lessen, reduce, restrict
minimus, smallest; *adv.* **minimē**

q.v. growth, 3.2, 3.5

17.3 much/little

much and many

quantum? how much?; **tantum, tantopere**, so much, so greatly, to such a degree

quot? how many?; **tot**, so many

multus, much (*adj.*); *noun* **multitūdō**;

multum (*noun and adv.*)

mōlēs, heavy mass

pondus, mass

acervus, cumulus, heap, pile; *verbs*

coacervāre, cumulāre

congerere, struere, heap or pile up; *nouns*

congeriēs, struēs, pile; **congestus**, carrying together

valdē, admodum, abundē, perquam, summē,

much, very (*adv.*), exceedingly, extremely

impēnsē, greatly, very much

māgnā ex parte, to a great extent

adeō, so much

multī, many; **plūrimī**, very many

nōnnēmō, several, many a one

complūrēs, several, very many

plērique, most, very many; *adv.* **plērumque**

māgnā or māiōre or māmā ex parte, mostly

in prīmīs, chiefly, mainly, specially

multiplex, manifold

too much

nimis, nimium, too much; *also adv.*

nimius, immodicus, excessive

extrā modum, immoderately

supervacāneus, superfluous

satis superque, superabundantly

more and less, more and fewer

plūs (*n.*), more; *G* **plūris**, e.g. *plūris tē faciō*, value you more

amplius, more, further, besides

plūrēs, more; *plūrēs sumus quam ...*, we outnumber

little and few

tantum ... quantum ..., as much ... as ...

tot ... quot ..., as many ... as ...

totidem, just as many

aliquantus, some; *noun* **aliquantum**, a

quantity, some amount; *advs.* **aliquantum, aliquantō**

nōn nihil, somewhat

quādam ex parte, ex aliquā parte, to some extent

paulum, paululum, a little

parum, only a little

minus (*n.*), less; *verb* **minuere**

mediocriter, fairly, not very, not much

paucī, few; **perpaucī**, very few; *noun* **paucitās**

ūnus aut alter, one or two

semel aut iterum, once or twice

rārus, scattered, far apart; *noun* **rāritās**

aliquot, a few

ūnus, one; *nē ūnus quidem*, not even one, not a single

too little

parum, too little, not enough; *also adv.*

17.4 enough/almost

enough

satis, enough; *s.* *superque*, enough and to spare; **satiāre, saturāre**, satisfy, sate

affatim, sufficiently, abundantly

sufficere, suppetere, be enough

almost

paene, ferē, fermē, prope, propemodum, almost, nearly

vix, ferē, fermē (*with neg.*), scarcely

vixdum, scarcely yet

17.5 all/none

all, some

omnis, all; *omnēs ad ūnum*, all to a man

ūniversī, all (as a body); *opposite* **singulī**, single, individuals; **singillātīm**, singly, separately

cūctus, all (together)

omnēs rēs, omnia, nihil nōn, everything

aliquis (*f quae or qua*), **nesciō quis**, someone

ūllus, any

nōnnūllī, some

aliquid, something

quīdam, someone, a certain one

aliī ... aliī ..., partim ..., partim ..., some ... others ...

only, none

sōlus, only (*adj.*); **sōlitūdō**, loneliness;

sōlitārius, lonely, alone

ūnicus, only, sole

proprius, praecipuus, special, particular

sōlum, tantum, dumtaxat, only (*adv.*), merely

nūllus, no (*adj.*)

nihil, nothing

nēmō, nobody; **nec quisquam**, and no one

17.6 whole/part

whole

tōtus, whole, complete; *ex tōtō*, quite, completely
plēnus, explētus, perfectus, complete, perfect; *noun perfectiō*; **perficere**, complete
solidus, complete, entire, whole
integer, whole
ūniversus (e.g. *exercitus*), whole
tōtum, whole (*noun*)
summa, whole (amount); *in summā*, *in omnī summā*, in all
omnīnō, penitus, prōrsus, omnī ex parte, rādīcitus or funditus (e.g. *tollere*), **stirpitus** (e.g. *extrahere*), wholly, entirely, absolutely
ferē, fermē, quite, entirely, just

q.v. together and apart, 6.3

part

incohātus, imperfectus, incomplete
pars, part, share; *māior* (or *māgna*) *p.*, majority; *diminutive particula*
ex parte, in part
portiō, share, part
commūnicāre Ac cum Ab, share with
cōnsociāre, share; *noun cōnsociātiō*
cōnsors, sharing
partīrī, dispertīre, share, divide, distribute
particeps, sharing, partaking; *p. sum*, take part; **participāre**, share
partim, partly; *partim ...*, *partim ...*, partly ..., partly ...
dīvidere, divide, distribute; *noun dīvisiō*;
indīviduus, indivisible
tribuere, divide
dēligere, ēligere, sēligere, choose, select; *nouns dēlectus, ēlectiō, sēlectiō*
discribere, distribuere, divide, distribute, allot; *nouns discriptiō, distribūtiō*
assīgnāre, attribuere, assign, allot; *nouns assīgnātiō, attribūtiō*

17.7 equal/unequal

equal and like

pār, aequālis, aequus, equal; *noun aequālītās*; *verbs adaequāre, exaequāre*; *sē cum Abpn e.*, pit oneself against
pariter, ex aequō, aequē, equally; *hunc aequē ac patrem* (as a father) *vereor*
parī intervāllō, at the same distance

similis, like; *superl. simillimus*, closely resembling; *noun similitūdō*; *verb simulāre*, make like; **assimulāre**, copy, imitate
propior (proximus) D, more (most) like
imitārī, imitate; *nouns imitātiō, imitātor*; *adj. imitābilis*
imāgō, effigiēs, likeness; **effingere**, portray
īnstar, likeness; *i. montis*, like a mountain
vicem or ad vicem or vice G, like
comparāre, cōnferre, compare; *nouns comparātiō, collātiō*

q.v. correspond, 49.3

unequal and unlike

dispār, impār, inaequālis, unequal
impariter, unequally
dissimilis, dīversus, absimilis, unlike; *noun dissimilitūdō*
differre, distāre, discrepāre cum or ab Abtg, dissentīre ab Abtg, differ; *multum distāre ab Ab*, differ greatly from; *nouns discrepantia, distantia*
abhorrēre ab Ab, differ from
interesse, differ
alius ac, different from
discernere, distinguere, diiudicāre, distinguish; *noun distīnctiō*

17.8 same/other

same

īdem, eadem, idem, same
nōn or haud alius, same
īdem, nōn or haud aliter, in the same way
unō tempore, unā, at the same time
ībīdem, in the same place
īndīdem, from the same place

other

alius, other
alter, other (of two), *also* second
cēterī, cēterum, the rest
varius, varied, various, diverse; *noun varietās*; *verb variāre*
aliter, aliōquī(n), otherwise
contrāriē, in an opposite direction
mūtāre, alter, change; *noun mūtātiō*; *adj. mūtābilis*
commūtāre, permūtāre, change completely; *noun permūtātiō*
immūtāre, change (partially)
vicissitūdō, change

17.91 quotus

quotus? which? (in numerical order)

prīmus, first

prīnceps, first (in rank, importance)

prīmum (*adv.*), first, in the first place

postrēmus, **ultimus**, **extrēmus**, **novissimus**,
last

postrēmō, lastly, finally

postrēmum, for the last time

17.92 numbering

numerus, number; **numerāre**, number, reckon

dīnumerāre, count up; **dīnumerātiō**,
enumeration

studia or scientia numerōrum, arithmetic

ratiōnem dūcere or habēre or subdūcere,

ratiōcinārī, make a computation, calculate;

subductiō, calculation

ēnumerāre, **inīre numerum**, **ōrdināre**,

reckon up, enumerate

Acqn **dē numerō excerpere**, exclude one from
a number

● **recēnsēre** (e.g. *militēs*), count, muster

addere, add

summam facere or subdūcere, calculate the
total

dēdūcere, subtract

multiplicāre, multiply

dīvidere, divide

17.93 two

ambō, both

alteruter, one of both

uter, which (of two), one (of two)

uterlibet, one of two

uterque, each of two, both

utercumque, whichever of the two

utervīs, either, whichever (of two) you please

utrimque, from or on both sides

utrōque, in both directions

alternus, one after another, alternate

alterum tantum, as much again

anceps, double (extending on two opposite
sides)

duplex, double (existing in two like forms)

duplus, double

geminus, double; *verb* **gemināre**

bipartītus, divided into two parts

duābus partibus amplius, twice as much

mūtuus, reciprocal, mutual; *adv.* **mūtuō**

17.94 order, row

ōrdō, order, row; *ōrdine or in (or per)*

ōrdinem, or ex ōrdine, in turn; extrā

*ōrdinem, out of turn; ōrdināre, arrange in
rows*

seriēs, row, sequence

passim, without order, anyhow

dīgerere, struere, instruere, arrange, set in
order

18.1 measure

mēnsūra, measure; *verbs* **mētīrī, dīmētīrī**

modus, measure

modius, peck; **amphora** = 6 gals. 7 pts.;

congius, one-eighth of amphora; **sextārius**,
one-sixth of congius, = about one pint; one
sixteenth of modius

ulna, cubitum, ell

pēs, foot; **uncia**, inch

decempeda, measuring rod (10 ft. long)

passus, pace (5 Roman feet)

stadium, 125 paces (just over 600 English
feet)

mīlle passuum, mile

lapis, milliārium, milestone

18.2 limit

modus, limit, right measure, bounds; *Dtg*

modum appōnere or impōnere or adhibēre,

set a limit to; extrā modum prōdire (e.g.

sūmptū), observe no limit; modum trānsire,

overstep the limit; ultrā modum, beyond the

limit; modicus, moderate; immodestus,

immoderate

finis, limit; *certōs sibi finēs*

cōstituere, set oneself definite limits;

finem trānsire, extrā finēs ēgredī,

overstep the limit; finīre, limit

terminus, limit; **termināre**, limit, mark off;

terminātiō, delimitation, limit

cancelli, limits (*lit.* railings)

19 weight

pondus, weight

exāmināre, expendere, weigh

statēra, steelyard, balance; **trutina**, pair of

scales, balance; **lanx**, scale (of balance)

libra, balance; pound (of 12 ounces)

uncia, ounce; **sēmūncia**, half-ounce

pondō, *adv.*, in weight; *as indecl. noun*
pounds, e.g. *aurī sex pondō*
gravis, heavy; *noun gravitās*
levis, light; *noun levitās*
mōlēs, weight, burden
onus, burden; **onustus**, loaded; **onerāre**, load,
burden
opprimere, burden, weigh upon

20.1 fulness

cōpia, plenty
abundāre, be rich in; *noun abundantia*
redundāre, have an excess of, overflow; *noun*
redundantia
affluere, abound; *adj. affluēns*; *noun*
affluentia
circumfluere, flow over, abound
cōfluere, crowd together (*intrans.*)
cōstīpāre, crowd together (*trans.*)
plēnus, **replētus**, full
farcīre, **cōnfercīre**, **refercīre**, **stīpāre**, stuff,
pack together; **cōnfertus**, **refertus** *Ab*, full
of, crammed with
complēre, **explēre**, **implēre**, **opplēre**, **replēre**,
fill; *noun complēmentum*
supplēre, refill
frēquēns, **celeber**, crowded; *nouns*
frequentia, **celebritās**; *verb frequentāre*
crēber, thick with

20.2 lack

sine *Ab*, without
inops *G*, destitute of, without; **inopia**, lack,
scarcity
inānis, **vacuus**, empty, bare, void, free from;
noun inānitās
vacāre, be empty, void
carēre *Ab*, be without, in want of
abesse *D*, be wanting
egēre, **indigēre**, *G or Ab*, lack; *noun*
indigentia
egēnus, destitute, void of; *noun egestās*
expers *G*, devoid of, without
orbis *Ab*, deprived of, without
nūdus *Ab*, void, without, e.g. *urbs nūda*
praesidiō; *verb nūdāre*, e.g. *mūrus*
nūdātus dēfēnsōribus
dēficere, be lacking, fail; *Pass. Ab or ab Ab*,
lack; *noun dēfectiō*
dēesse; *dēsunt mihi librī*, I am in want of
books
prīvāre, e.g. *Acpn somnō*, *vītā*,
approbātiōne, deprive, strip of

dēsertus, **vāstus**, solitary, waste, unoccupied
īnfrequēns, not numerous, sparsely attended;
noun īnfrequentia
exhaurīre, empty

21 ANIMALS

21.1

animal, animal
bēstia, beast (any living creature, except man)
bēlua, (huge) animal
sexus, sex
mās, male; **fēmīna**, female
pullus, young animal
pellis, skin, hide, pelt; **pellītus**, clad in skins
corium, hide, leather
alūta, soft leather
cornū, horn; *adj. corneus*
ungula, hoof
iuba, mane
cauda, tail
saeta, hair (of animal), bristle
horrēre, **horrēscere**, bristle

21.2 domestic mammals

cīcur, tame
equus, horse; **equa**, mare; **pullus**, foal; *adj.*
equīnus
hinnīre, neigh; *noun hinnītus*

q.v. riding, 7.6

q.v. racing, 35.3

asinus, donkey; **mūlus**, mule; **mūliō**, muleteer
iūmentum, beast of burden
canis, dog; *c. sagāx*, *d.* with keen scent;
catulus, **catula**, **catellus**, **catella**, lap-dog
lātrāre, bark
fēlēs or **fēlis**, cat
mūs, mouse

q.v. farmstock, 8

21.3 wild mammals

fera, wild beast
ferus, wild
domāre, **mānsuēfacere**, tame
intractātus, untamed
cunīculus, rabbit; **lepus**, hare

cervus, stag; **cerva**, hind
alcēs, elk
lupus, lupa, wolf; **vulpēs**, fox; *dimin.*
 vulpēcula; **lynx**, lynx
aper, wild boar
ursus, ursae, bear
leō, lea, leaena, lion; **tigris**, tiger
panthēra, panther
hyaena, hyena
elephās, elephantus, elephant
ebur, ivory; *adj.* **eburneus**
camēlus, camel
dromas, dromedary
dorcas, gazelle, antelope
onager, wild ass
sīmia, monkey
castor, beaver
mustēla, weasel
nitēdula, dormouse
talpa, mole

vēnārī, captāre, hunt; **vēnātor**, hunter;
 vēnātiō, hunting, chase
laqueus, snare; *collum inserere in*
 laqueum, get caught; **illaqueāre**, ensnare
illigāre, entangle, ensnare
plaga, snare, trap; **rēte**, net
excipere, catch

21.4 birds

avis, volucris, bird; **āles**, (large) bird
nīdus, nest; *diminutive* **nīdulus**
ōvum, egg; **parere, pōnere**, lay (eggs)
aviārium, aviary
āla, wing; **volucer, āles, āliger**, *poet.* winged
penna, feather, wing
plūma, feather; *P* down; *adj.* **plūmātus**
volāre, fly; **volitāre**, fly to and fro, flutter
rōstrum, beak; **unguis**, talon

21.5 domestic birds

gallus, cock; **gallīna**, hen; **pullus**, chicken;
 pullārius, chicken keeper
canere, crow, sing; **strepere**, cackle
crista, cockscomb
ānsēr, gander, goose
anas, duck
columba, dove, pigeon; **columbārium**,
 dovecot
pāvō, peacock
cavea, bird cage

21.6 wild birds

passer, sparrow
hirundō, swallow
cicōnia, stork
cycnus, olor, swan; *adj.* **olōrīnus**
corvus, raven; **cornīx**, crow
merula, blackbird
palumbēs, wood-pigeon
turtur, turtle-dove
pīca, magpie
pīcus, woodpecker
monēdula, grāculus, jackdaw
coturnīx, quail
grūs, crane
ardea, heron
alcēdō, alcyōn, kingfisher
aquila, eagle
accipiter, hawk
vulturius, vulture
mīlvus, kite
būbō, noctua, owl
strix, screech-owl
aucupārī, go birdcatching; **aucupium**,
 birdcatching; **auceps**, birdcatcher, fowler

21.7 fish

piscis, fish
nāre, natāre, swim; *noun* **natātiō**
squāma, scale
piscārī, fish; **piscātor**, fisherman, fishmonger;
 piscātus, fishery; **piscīna**, fishpond
rēte, net; **hāmus**, hook; **līnea**, line
delphīn, delphīnus, dolphin
lollīgō, sēpia, cuttlefish
mūrēx, crimson fish
cancer, crab; **ostrea**, oyster
conchylium, shellfish, oyster
margarīta, pearl

21.8 reptiles

anguis, serpēns, coluber, colubra, snake
vīpera, viper
serpere, rēpere, crawl
lacerta or -us, lizard
rāna, frog
būfō, toad
vermis, worm
testūdō, tortoise

21.9 insects

apis, bee; **fūcus**, drone; **exāmen**, swarm

mel, honey; *adj.* **mellitus**
favus, honeycomb
cēra, wax; *adj.* **cēreus**
acūleus, sting; **pungere, compungere**, sting;
noun **pūnctum**
alvārium, alveus, cavea, beehive
vespa, wasp
susurrāre, buzz, hum
musca, fly
crābrō, hornet
asīlus, oestrus, gadfly
arānea, spider
pāpiliō, butterfly, moth
formīca, ant
cicāda, tree-cricket
tīnea, moth, bookworm
hirūdō, leech

22 PLANTS

22.1

arbor, tree; **arbustus**, planted with trees;
arbustum, plantation, orchard
trichila, arbour
truncus, stīpes, trunk; **rāmus**, branch; **virga**,
 twig, rod; *diminutive* **virgula**
stirps, trunk (with roots), stem; *adv.* **stirpitus**,
 root and branch
planta, shoot, twig, cutting
līgna (P), (fire)wood
sarmenta (P), twigs, brushwood
clāvicula, tendril
rōbur, hardwood; **māteria**, timber
pālus, sublica, stake
succīdere, fell; **caedere**, fell, lop; **frondātor**,
 pruner of trees; **scindere**, split; **dolāre**, hew
cortex, bark
spīna, thorn; *adj.* **spīnōsus**
rādix, root; **rādīcēs agere**, strike root;
arborēs ab rādīcibus subruere, uproot;
adv. **rādīcitus**, root and all
culmus, stalk (of corn)
folium, leaf; **frōns**, leaf, leafy branch, foliage;
 garland of leaves; **coma**, foliage
sūcus, sap

22.2

silva, forest; *adj.* **silvestris**
nemus, wood
virgulta (P), thicket, copse, bush
lūcus, grove (sacred to a deity); *poet.*, wood
saltus, glen; *adj.* **saltuōsus**

fāgus, beech; *adjs.* **fāgineus, fāginus**
laurus, laurea, laurel; **laureātus**, crowned
 with laurel
palma, palm-tree; **palmētum**, palm grove;
palmōsus, rich in palms
cedrus, cedar
taxus, yew-tree
pīnus, pine; **pīnētum**, pine wood; *adj.* **pīneus**
picea, pitch-pine
quercus, oak; **querquētum**, oak wood; **glāns**,
 acorn; **rōbustus**, of oak
aesculus, Italian oak
cupressus, cypress
fraxinus, ash; *adj.* **fraxineus**
ōrnus, mountain ash
platanus, plane-tree
castānea, chestnut-tree
alnus, alder
larix, larch
salix, willow; **salictum**, plantation of willows
acer, maple
tilia, lime-tree
ulmus, elm
īlex, holm-oak
pōpulus, poplar
abiēs, silver fir
arbutus, wild strawberry-tree
murra, myrrh tree
iūniperus, juniper tree
buxus, box-tree; **buxum**, wood of box-trees
corulus, hazel-shrub
veprēs, thorn-bush, bramble
sentis, briar
vīmen, osier
genista, broom
hedera, ivy
harundō, reed
iuncus, rush; **scirpus**, rush, bulrush; **ulva**,
 sedge
fungus, mushroom
alga, seaweed
muscus, moss; *adj.* **muscōsus**
viscum, mistletoe

22.3

hortus, garden; *dimin.* **hortulus**
saepēs, fence; **saepīre**, fence, hedge in
herba, grāmen, grass, herb; *adj.* **herbidus**
caespes, turf, sod
gemma, germen, bud; *verb* **gemma**
flōs, flower; *diminutive* **flōsculus**; **flōrēre**, be
 in flower; **efflōrēscere**, bloom, flourish;
adjs. **flōrēns, flōridus**
corōna, sēta (P), garland, wreath

rosa, rose, rose-tree, roses; **rosarium**,
rosētum, rosary
lilium, lily
viola, violet; **violarium**, bed of violets
amāracus, marjoram
amaranthus, amaranth
caltha, marigold
rūta, rue
thymum *or* **-us**, thyme
serpullum, wild thyme
crocum *or* **-us**, saffron
narcissus, narcissus
myrtus, myrtle-tree; **myrtētum**, myrtle grove;
adj. **myrteus**
papāver, poppy
lupīnus, lupin
cicūta, hemlock
carduus, thistle

22.4 fruit-trees

frūctus, fruit; *frūctum ēdere*, yield f.; f.
tempestivus, ripe f.; *adj.* **frūctuōsus**,
fruitful
frūgēs, fruits, field produce; f. *fundere*,
bring forth f.; *adj.* **frūgifer**, fruitful
fertilis, **fēcundus**, fruitful; *nouns* **fertilitās**,
fēcunditās
mātūrus, ripe; *noun* **mātūritās**; *verb*
mātūrāre, **mātūrēscere**
sēmen, seed; **germen**, germ
pōmum, fruit, fruit-tree
mālum, fruit (e.g. peach, orange)
pōmārium, orchard
mālus, apple-tree; **mālum**, apple
pirus, pear-tree; **pirum**, pear
prūnus, plum-tree; **prūnum**, plum
cerasus, cherry-tree; **cerasum**, cherry
ficus, fig-tree, fig
mōrus, mulberry-tree; **mōrum**, mulberry
amygdala, almond tree
amygdalum, almond

22.5

vītis, **vīnea**, vine; **ūva**, grape, bunch of grapes;
pampinus, tendril or leaf of vine
vīnea, **vīnētum**, vineyard; **vīnum**, wine, *see*
29.8; **vīndēmia**, vintage; **vīndēmiātor**,
vintager; **vīnitor**, vinedresser
olīva, olive, olive-tree; **olīvētum**, olive
plantation; **oleum**, olive oil; *adj.* **oleārius**
nux, nut
frāgum, strawberry

22.6

olus, vegetable
legūmen, leguminous plant
lēns, lentil
caulis, **crambē**, cabbage
bēta, beet
faba, bean
cucumis, cucumber
bulbus, **cēpa**, onion
ālium, garlic
apium, parsley, celery

23 MINERALS

metallum, metal
aurum, gold; *adjs.* **aureus**, **aurātus**; *verbs*
aurāre, **inaurāre**; **aurifex**, goldsmith
argentum, silver; *adj.* **argenteus**
ferrum, iron; *adj.* **ferreus**
chalybs, steel; *adj.* **chalybēius**
rōbīgō, **ferrūgō**, rust
aes, bronze, copper; *adjs.* **aēnus**, *later* **aēneus**,
aerātus
aerūgō, verdigris
orīchalcum, brass
plumbum, lead; *adj.* **plumbeus**
plumbum album, tin
lapis, **saxum**, stone; *diminutive* **lapillus**; *adj.*
lapideus
lapicīda, mason; **lapicīdīnae**, quarry
caementum, stone rough from the quarry;
quadrātum saxum, hewn stone
metallum, mine, quarry
aerāria, mine
gemma, *poet.* **lapis**, precious stone, gem, jewel
cōs, any hard stone, flint
calculus, pebble
marmor, marble; *adj.* **marmoreus**; *marmor or*
signum marmoreum, marble statue
statua, statue; *statuam statuere*, erect a s.
ars fingendī, sculpture; **fictor**, sculptor
scalpere, **sculpere**, **exsculpere**, carve; *ē saxō*
sculptus, carved in stone
onyx, onyx
carbō, coal
sulpur, sulphur
calx, **crēta**, chalk
argilla, (potter's) clay; **rota**, (potter's) wheel
figulus, potter; **fictilis**, earthen, of clay
vitrum, glass; *adj.* **vitreus**

24-27 MAN

24.1

genus hominum or **hūmānum**, or **gēns hūmāna**, or **hominēs**, mankind
homō, man (not animal); *diminutives*
homunciō, **homunculus**
hūmānus, human; *noun* **hūmānitās**, human nature
mortālis, human being; *as adj.* mortal, human
post hominēs nātōs, since men have lived
quī nunc sunt hominēs, the present generation
vir, man (not woman); *adj.* **virīlis**; **virītīm**, singly, individually; **virtūs**, manliness
fēmina, woman; *diminutive* **fēmella**; *adj.* **fēmineus**
mulier, woman; *diminutive* **muliercula**; *adj.* **muliebris**

q.v. name, 24.6

24.2 ages of man

extrēmae (exāctae) aetātis homō, a man advanced (far advanced) in years
prōvectā aetāte, at an advanced age
grandis, grandis nātū, aged man
senex, old man; *adj.* **senīlis**; *verb* **senēscere**;
senectūs, **aetās senēscēns**, old age
anus, old woman; *adj.* **anīlis**
omnēs aetātis superiōris, all older men
senior, elderly man
paulum aetāte prōgressus, become rather older; **prōgrediente aetāte**, with advancing years
adulta aetās, maturity
iam adultus, one in mature life
aetās iam corrōborāta, aetātēs cōfirmātae, years of discretion
iuvenis, man or woman in prime of life;
iuventūs, flōs aetātis, prime of life
in suam tūtēlam venīre, come of age
togam virilem (or pūram) sūmere, assume the garb of manhood
pūbēs, grown up, adult; *as noun*, youth, young man; *verb* **pūbēscere**
adolēscēns, youth, maid; *admodum a.*, in quite early manhood; *noun* **adolēscēntia**
adolēscere, grow up
virgō, maiden; *adj.* **virginālis**, *poet.* **virginēus**
impūbēs, under age, youthful
adolēscētulus, youngster

aetātula, tender age, youthful age
ex puerīs excessit, has ceased to be a child
liberī, nātī, children (in relation to parents);
liberōs suscipere, tollere,
acknowledge, bring up children
puerī, children (generally)
puer, boy; *diminutive* **puerulus**; **pueritia**, boyhood; *ā puerō, ā puerīs, ā pueritiā*, from boyhood; **puerīlis**, boyish, childish
puella, girl; *diminutive* **puellula**
parvī, young children; *ā parvīs*, from childhood
cūnābula, cradle
crepundia, rattle

24.3 relationship

orīgō, source, descent, progenitor; *orīginem dūcere or trahere ab Ab*, trace one's descent from
genus, prōsāpia, race, stock; family
māiōrēs, patrēs, ancestors, forbears
avus, atavus, ancestor
posterī, posteritās, poet. nepōtēs, posterity, descendants
prōgnātus, ortus, descended; *noun* **prōgnātus**, descendant, child
subolēs, progeny, offspring, descendant
saeculum, generation
cōgnātus, coniūctus sanguine, cōnsanguineus, blood relation, connected (by birth); *nouns* **cōgnātiō, cōnsanguinitās**
āgnātus, related on the father's side; *noun* **āgnātiō**
propinquus, necessārius, relation, kinsman; *Mārci necessārius et propinquus, a near relation of M.*; **propinquitās**, relationship
atavus, great-great-great-grandfather
abavus, great-great-grandfather
proavus, great-grandfather; **proavia**, great-grandmother
pronepōs, great-grandson; **proneptis**, great-granddaughter
avus, grandfather; **avia**, grandmother
nepōs, grandson; **neptis**, granddaughter
mātertera, mother's sister
frātris (sororis) filiūs, filia, nephew, niece
(frāter, soror) patruēlis, cousin (child of father's brother or sister)
sobrīnus, cōnsobrīnus, -a, cousin (child of mother's brother or sister)
alumnus, foster-son; **alumna**, foster-daughter
parēs, parent; *P also* grandparents

pater, genitor, father; *vestigiiis patris ingredi*, follow in father's footsteps; *adj.*

paternus, patrius, paternal

māter, genetrīx (*poet. and late*), mother;

diminutive mātercula; *adj. māternus*

mātrōna, married woman, mother

vitricus, stepfather; **noverca**, stepmother

filius, nātus, son

filia, nāta, daughter

patre certō (*opposite nullō*) **nāscī**, be a legitimate child

prīvīgnus, -a, stepson, stepdaughter

frāter, brother; *adj. frāternus*

soror, sister; *adj. sorōrius*

germānus, of brothers and sisters who have the same parents, e.g. *g. frāter*

geminus, gemellus (*poet.*), twin

patruus, father's brother

avunculus, mother's brother

amita, father's sister

24.4 marriage

rēs uxōria, matrimony, wedlock

caelebs, unmarried, single

procus, suitor

spōnsus, -a, betrothed man or woman

filiam Dpn dēspondēre, promise one's daughter in marriage to

condiciō, match, alliance

mātrimōnium, marriage; in m. *dare*, in m.

or in *mātrimōniō collocāre*, give in m.;

in m. *dūcere Dēliam*, *or simply dūcere*

D., take *D.* to wife

cōnūbium, coniugium, wedlock

nūbere D, marry (a man); *noun nūptiae*,

wedding; **nūpta**, bride, wife; **prōnuba**, bridesmaid

innūbere, marry into (a family)

ēnūbere, marry out of one's rank or town

coēemptiō, a form of mock marriage

dōs, dowry

vir, marītus, husband

coniūnx, wife, *sometimes* husband

uxor, wife

prōgeniēs, prōlēs (*poet.*), offspring

24.5 relations by marriage

affinis, related by marriage; *noun affinis*,

relation by marriage; **affinitās**; *affinitāte*

coniūctus, related by marriage

socer, father-in-law

socrus, mother-in-law

nurus, daughter-in-law

sorōris marītus, brother-in-law

repudiāre, ā mātrimōniō dīmmittere, divorce;

noun repudium, (compulsory) divorce

nūntium uxōrī remittere, send a letter of divorce

dīvortium, separation (by consent)

clāvēs adimere uxōrī, separate from one's wife

istam suās rēs sibi habēre iussit, he divorced her

vidua, widow; **vir viduus**, widower

orbis, bereaved, fatherless, orphan, childless;

orbitās, childlessness; **orbāre**, deprive of parents or children

pupillus, orphan, minor; *as noun pupillus*,

pupilla, ward

superesse, survive; **superstes**, surviving

24.6 name

nōmen, name, designation; *Dpn n. impōnere*,

give a n.; *ex Abtg n. capere, invenire or trahere*, get, derive a n. from; *verb*

nōmināre; nōminātim, by name;

nōminātiō, nomination

cōgnōminis, having the same name

praenōmen, first name (like our "Christian name"); **cōgnōmen**, third name; *in Mārcus Tullius Cicerō, Mārcus is the praenōmen, Cicerō the cōgnōmen*

nūncupāre, name, call (by name)

tītulus, title; *ūsūrpāre tītulum*, assume a t.; *quī Sapiēns ūsūrpātur*, is called S.

dēnotāre, dēsīgnāre, designate, specify; *noun dēsīgnātiō*

24.7 mark, sign

nota, index, mark, sign; **notāre**, mark, indicate

sīgnum, mark, token; **sīgnificāre**, indicate;

sīgnificātiō, sign, indication

q.v. THE FOLLOWING ENTRY IS MISSING IN EVAN'S AUDIO FILES

specimen, sign, token

25.1 household

familia, domus, household; *adj.* **familiāris**, belonging to h.; **domesticus**, belonging to one's family or household; *domesticus ūsus et cōnsuētūdō*, family life; **domesticī**, members of a family
ad focum sedēre, be in the midst of one's family
paterfamiliās, head of family; **māterfamiliās**, mistress of house
patria potestās, power of father over children; *sevērū imperium in suis exercet*, he is a strict father and master
ēmancipāre, free from "patria potestās"; *noun* **ēmancipatiō**
dominus, erus, master
domina, era, mistress
suōrum dēsiderium, home-sickness
ad suum larem familiārem redire, return home
patrōnus, cliēns, *The cliēns (client, follower) was a plebeian, freedman or foreigner who enjoyed the favour and protection of the patrōnus (patron, defender, advocate) whom he had chosen and to whom he rendered minor services.*

25.2 servants

ātriēnsis, overseer of house, steward
minister, famulus, servant
ministra, famula, ancilla, maid
pedisequus, pedisequa, attendant
iānitor, door-keeper
coquus, cook
prōmus, slave who distributed food to household
condus, slave in charge of stores
paedagōgus, slave in charge of children, tutor
servus ā manū, secretary
vīlicus, steward, bailiff
servīre *Dpn*, serve, be a servant of

q.v. slavery, 33.7

q.v. messenger, 48.33

25.3 nation

nātiō, nation
populus, nation, people; *secundō populō (Actg facere)*, with the consent of the people; *Populus Rōmānus Quirītēsque*,

official title of Roman people; *Senātus Populusque Rōmānus (SPQR)*; *adj.* **populāris**; *as noun* countryman, fellow-countryman

gēns, people, race, clan
gentīlis, fellow-clansman
stirps, stock, breed
genus, race
tribus, tribe, each consisting of ten cūriae; *adv.* **tribūtīm**, by tribes
cūria, ward, each consisting of ten gentēs; *adv.* **cūriātīm**, by wards
aboriginēs, early inhabitants, ancestors of the Romans
vernāculus, native, Roman
finitīmī, neighbours
aliēnus, foreign; **aliēnigena**, foreigner, alien

25.4 gatherings

coetus, grex, globus, caterva, company, crowd
frequentia, crowd, throng
multitūdō, turba, crowd, throng, mob
chorus, band, company

q.v. crowded, 20.1

concilium, cōnsilium, assembly, meeting, council
conventus, cōntiō, meeting
corōna, crowd, assembly (espec. judicial)
congregārī, crowd (*intr.*), assemble
circulārī, gather in groups
congressiō, congressus, meeting, intercourse
plēbs or plēbēs, vulgus, common people

25.5 social life

invītāre, invite, entertain; *Acpn domum suam i.*, invite to one's house; *noun* **invītatiō**
vīsere, invīsere, *Acpn or domum Gpn*, **convenīre** *Acpn*, visit
salūtāre, visit, call on, pay a (ceremonial) call; receive visitors; **salūtatiō**, visit
frequentāre domum Gpn, frequent, visit frequently
intervīsere, visit occasionally
🔴 **hospes**, (hereditary) friend; host, guest; *hospitēs accipere or recipere*, have as guests; *adj.* **hospitālis**; **hospitium, hospitālitās**, hospitality, (hereditary) friendship; *h. facere (or iungere) cum Abpn*, become guest and friend of; **apud**

Acpn esse or commorārī, be paying a visit to, staying with; *noun commorātiō advena, hospes*, stranger

cōnsuētūdō, social intercourse, companionship, acquaintance
convīctiō, convīctus, social intercourse, companionship, acquaintance
amicus, amīca, friend; *praestā tē amicum*, prove a true friend; *Mārcum amicōrum in numerō habeō, Mārcum amicum or prō amicō habeō, amicō ūtor Mārcō*, enjoy the friendship of M.
amīcītia, friendship
concors, harmonious; **concordia**, union, harmony; **concordāre**, agree
favēre Dpn, be a friend to
cōnsentire cum Abpn dē Abtg, agree with; *nouns cōnsēnsiō, cōnsēnsus*
familiāris, friend; **familiāritās**, intimacy, friendship
intimus, close friend
socius, companion, associate; **societās**, fellowship, society; *vītae s.*, social life; *societātem cum Abpn inīre*, enter into partnership with
necessārius, friend; **comes, sodālis**, comrade; **sodālitās, necessitās, necessitūdō, coniūctiō**, friendship, intimacy; *amicītiaē necessitūdīnēs*, ties, bonds of friendship; (*homō*) *summā sodālitāte*, with a wide circle of friends
grātia, favour, regard; *apud tē grātiām ineō*, win your favour
fautor, fautrix, patron(ess), favourer
coniūctus, friendly, intimate
collēga, colleague, companion
circulus, company (for social intercourse)
collēgium, society, company, fraternity
sodālitās, society, club
cōnsors, partner, colleague, comrade; **cōnsortium**, fellowship

aemulus, aemula, rīvālis, rival; *verb aemulārī; noun rīvālitās*
competītor, rival
certātīm, with rivalry
discordia, discord; *discordiās sēdāre*, remove d.; *adj. discors*
discidium, discord
rīxa, quarrel, brawl; *verb rīxārī*

iūrgium, dispute (among friends); *verb iūrgāre*
contentiō, concertātiō, contrōversia, dispute, contention; *verb concertāre*
lis, dispute (among adversaries), general and legal
altercārī, quarrel; **altercātiō**, (violent) quarrel
dēcertāre, dispute
simultās, strained relations, enmity
obsistere, obstāre, oppose; **resistere**, resist
subigere, reduce to submission
īnfēnsus, inimīcus, hostile; *as noun* (private) enemy; **inimīcītiaē (P)**, enmity
pūgnāx, quarrelsome
aliēnus, averse, unfriendly; **aliēnātiō**, dislike
implācābilis, irreconcilable
tēcum in grātiām redeō, am reconciled with you; **amīcītiām dē integrō reconciliāre**, restore friendship; *nouns reconciliātiō, reconciliātor*
amīcītiām cum Abpn conciliāre, win someone over; *noun conciliātiō*
Acpn or animum Gpn Dpn reconciliāre, Acpn in grātiām cum Abpn redūcere, Acpn Dpn plācāre, reconcile A with B

patrōnus, patron
cliēns, client

25.6 commotion, tumult

turba, uproar, disorder; **turbulentus**, restless, confused; **turbāre**, disturb, throw into confusion, agitate
tumultus, uproar, disturbance; **tumultuōsus**, full of commotion, disturbed
mōtus populī, unrest
procellae, commotion, tumult

26 BODY

26.1

corpus, body; *diminutive corpusculum; adj. corporeus*
cadāver, dead body, corpse
statūra, height or size of body
figūra, fōrma, figure
cutis, skin
callum, hard, thick skin; **ocallēscere**, get thick-skinned
sūdāre, sweat; *noun sūdor*

ōs, bone; *adj.* **osseus**; **medulla**, marrow
crīnis, hair (*generally*); *adjs.* **crīnālis**,
crīnītus; **villus**, shaggy hair; **pīlus**, single
hair
carō, flesh, meat
torus, nervus, muscle
vēna, vein; **artēria**, artery
sanguis, blood; **cruor**, gore, blood(shed); *adj.*
cruentus; *verb* **cruentāre**, stain with b.
corporis habitus, personal appearance, build
gestus, bearing, posture, gesture
sē iactāre, make gestures
grandis, prōcērus, tall; *noun* **prōcērītās**
brevis, short
pinguis, plp. obēsus, fat, stout; **pinguēscere**,
grow fat
macer, thin, lean; *noun* **maciēs**
gracilis, slender, slim, lean; *noun* **gracilitās**
tenuis, thin; *noun* **tenuitās**

26.2 head, face

head

caput, head; c. **dēmittere**, hang, bow one's
head
calva, skull
vertex, top of head
cerebrum, brain
nūtāre, nod; *noun* **nūtus**

hair

capillus (*P rare*), **coma** or **comae**, hair;
comāns, comōsus, hairy
pectere, comb; *noun* **pecten**
cōmere, comb, arrange, dress (hair)
hirsūtus, shaggy
capillum compōnere, do one's hair
intōnsus, unshorn, with long hair
calamistrum, curling-irons
crispus, calamistrātus, curled; *verb* **crispāre**
cincinnus, (artificial) curl
calvus, bald; *noun* **calvitium**
cānus (*poet.*), greyhaired, hoary; **cānī** (sc.
capillī), grey hair
barba, beard; **mentum**, beard (on chin);
diminutive **barbula**; **barbātus**, bearded;
imberbis, beardless
tondēre, clip, trim, shave; **tōnsor**, barber;
tōnstrīna, barber's shop
rādere, shave; **novācula**, razor

face

faciēs, ōs, face, countenance; *nōsse Acpn* **dē**
faciē, know one by sight
vultus, face, mien, expression, features

color, complexion; c. **albus**, fair c.
frōns, forehead, brow; *frontem contrahere*,
knit the brows
rūga, wrinkle; *adj.* **rūgōsus**
tempora *P*, temples
supercilium, eyebrow
palpebra, eyelid
oculus, poet. lūmen, eye; **pūpula**, pupil
lacrima, tear; *lacrimās commovēre*, cause
tears; *lacrimās effundere*, shed t.; *vim*
lacrimārum profundere, shed a flood of t.;
flēre, lacrimāre, weep; *noun* **flētus**;
reprimere flētum, check tears; *adj.*
flēbilis; plōrāre, weep aloud, wail
caecus, oculīs captus, blind; **caecitās**,
blindness; **caecāre**, blind
luscus, one-eyed
oculī perversī, squinting eyes
strabō, one who squints; *also adj.*
paetus, having a cast in the eye; *diminutive*
paetulus

q.v. sight, 14

auris, ear
surdus, auribus captus, deaf; **obsurdēscere**,
grow deaf
surdus idemque mūtus, deaf mute

q.v. sound, 13

nāsus, nose
nāris, nostril; *P* **nārēs**, nose
silus, snub-nosed
olfacere, smell

q.v. smell, 12.3

corrūgāre nārēs, turn up the nose
sē ēmungere or **ēmungī**, blow one's nose
sternuere, sneeze
gena, cheek; **bucca**, cheek (puffed out); *both*
usu. P.
rubēre, ērubēscere, blush; *noun* **rubor**;
pallēscere, expallēscere, grow pale;
pallēre, be or grow pale; *noun* **pallor**; *adj.*
pallidus, pale
fūcus, rouge
crēta, face powder

mouth

ōs, mouth

rictum, rictus, (open) mouth
hiāre, gape; **hiātus**, open mouth
palātum, palate
faucēs, gula, guttur, throat, gullet
sorbēre, absorbēre, suck in, swallow
lābrum, lip
ridēre, laugh; *noun* **rīsus**; *rīsūs ēdere*,
 laugh; *rīsum movēre or commovēre or*
concitāre, raise laughter; *rīsum rumpere*,
 check laughter; *adj.* **rīdīculus**; **subrīdēre**,
 smile; **arrīdēre**, smile upon; **cachinnāre**,
 laugh aloud; *noun* **cachinnus**, loud laugh,
 guffaw

26.3 trunk, limbs

collum, cervicēs (P), neck
iugulum, collarbone; throat
gurguliō, windpipe
pectus, mamma, breast; **sinus**, bosom
spīna, backbone
costa, rib
umerus, shoulder
dorsum, dorsus, tergum, back
lumbus, loin
gremium, lap

internal organs

viscera (P), internal organs
intestīnum, intestine
cor, heart
artēria, windpipe
pulmō, lung; **spīrāre, respīrāre**, breathe;
anima, spīritus, hālitus, breath; *spīritum*
dūcere, draw b.; **suspīrāre**, breathe deeply,
 sigh; **respīrātiō**, taking breath; **suspīrium**,
 sigh; **anhēlāre**, pant; *noun* **anhēlitus**;
exanimārī, lose breath
venter, abdōmen, alvus, paunch
īlia, groin
stomachus, gullet, windpipe, stomach
praecordia, diaphragm; stomach
iecur, liver
rēnēs, kidneys

limbs

artūs (P), **membrum**, limb
lacertus, arm, upper arm
bracchium, arm, forearm
braccia circumdare or inicere or implicāre
collō, or amplectī or complectī, embrace;
noun **complexus**
ulna, elbow; *poet.* arm
cubitum, elbow

hand

manus, hand
tractāre, handle; *noun* **tractātiō**; *adj.*
tractābilis
plaudere, clap the hands
dexter, right; *dextram tendere, porrigere*,
 offer one's hand
sinister, laevus (poet.), left; *noun* **sinistra**,
laeva, left hand
palma, palm, *poet.* hand
manūs supīnae, hands with palm upward (as
 in prayer)
pūgnus, fist; **pūgnīs certāre**, box
digitus, finger; **pollex**, thumb
concrepāre digitīs, snap the fingers
ānulus, ring
unguis, nail

leg

femur, thigh; **crūs**, leg, shin; **genū**, knee;
tībia, shinbone; **tālus**, ankle; **pēs**, foot
prōterere, trample on
gradus, passus, step, pace
vestīgium, footprint, footprint, sole of foot;
Gpn vestīgia persequī, follow in f. of
calx, heel; *calce petere*, kick
planta, sole of foot
claudus, lame, crippled; *verbs* **claudēre**,
claudicāre, limp

sāvium or suāvium (early), **ōsculum, bāsium**
(poet.), kiss; **dare sāvium, s(u)āviārī**,
ōsculārī, bāsīare, kiss
ōscitāre, yawn
lingua, tongue; **lambere**, lick

q.v. taste, 12.4

dēns, tooth; **mordēre**, bite; *noun* **morsus**; *adj.*
mordāx; **rōdere**, gnaw; **mandāre**, chew,
 devour

q.v. voice, speech, 41

mentum, chin

q.v. walk, 4.4

26.4 health

salūs, welfare; *adj.* **salūber** or **-bris**, **salūtāris**, healthful, wholesome; *noun* **salūbritās**

valēre, be well, in good health; *noun* **valētūdō**, health; *v.* *integra*, good health; *valētūdinī cōsulere*, take care of oneself; *valētūdine bonā ūtī*, enjoy good health

sibi parcere, be careful of one's health

sānus, **valēns**, **validus**, healthy; *noun* **sānitās**; *incompactā sānitāte esse*, be in thoroughly sound health

vigēre, **virēre**, flourish, be strong; *nouns* **vigor**, **viriditās**

integer, sound, in full vigor; *noun* **integritās**

rōbur, strength; *adj.* **rōbustus**

fīrmus, **validus**, **valēns**, **virilis**, strong, vigorous; *noun* **fīrmitās**; *verb* **fīrmāre**;

dūrus, (*poet.*) hardy, vigorous; *noun* **dūritia**

26.5 sickness

gravitās valētūdinis or **valētūdō**, or **aegra** or **infirma valētūdō**, ill-health *valētūdinem amittere*, fall ill; *valētūdine tenuissimā esse*, be very weak; *valētūdinem (or morbum) excūsāre*, plead ill-health as an excuse; *valētūdinis excūsātiōne ūtī*, avail oneself of the excuse of ill-health

graviter sē habēre, feel unwell

aeger, **aegrōtus**, sick, ill, diseased; *aegrum simulāre*, pretend to be ill, malingering; *verb* **aegrōtāre**; *nouns* **aegritūdō** (*usu.* of mind), **aegrōtātiō**

imbēcillus, **dēbilis**, **infirmus**, **invalidus**, feeble, weak; *nouns* **imbēcillitās**, **dēbilitās**, **morbus**, illness, disease, ailment; *morbo affici* or *implicārī*, in morbum cadere or *incidere* or *incurrere*, fall ill

morbo impeditus, stricken by illness

insānābilis, incurable

dēbilitāre, lame, maim, weaken

senium, feebleness (of old age)

vitium corporis, bodily defect

dolor, pain; *verb* **dolēre**, feel pain

afflictātiō, torment, pain

gravēdō, cold (in the head), catarrh

pītuīta, cold

tussis, cough; *verb* **tussire**

febris, fever; *febrim nanciscī*, catch a f.;

febrīcula, slight fever

podagra, gout

tremere, **horrēre**, **horrēscere**, **contremēscere** (e.g. *omnibus artubus*), **perhorrēscere**

(e.g. *tōtō corpore*), tremble, shudder; *noun* **tremor**; *adj.* **tremulus**, *plp.*

obtorpēscere, grow torpid, lose feeling

torpēre, be stiff, numb

tumēre, be swollen

dolor artuum, gout

pēs luxus, sprained foot

mancus, decrepit, infirm

ulcus, **vomica**, ulcer, sore

q.v. *deaf, blind*, 26.2

pestilentia, **pestis**, plague

pestilēns (locus), infected, unhealthy

contāgiō, infection

tābēs, wasting, consumption, plague; *verbs*

tābēscere, **perīre**, waste away, perish

vulnus, wound; *v.* *accipere* or *sustinēre*, be wounded; *v.* *obligāre*, bandage w.; *v.*

inferre, or *vulnerāre*, wound; **saucius**, wounded; *verb* **saucire**; **cōfectus**, disabled, exhausted

cicātrīx, scar

mortifer, deadly, causing death

q.v. *poison*, 47.2

26.6 medical treatment

ars medendī, **medicīna**, practice of medicine; **medicīnam exercēre**, **profitērī**, practise as a doctor

cūrāre, **sānāre**, **medērī**, heal, cure, restore to health; *adj.* **sānābilis**, curable

subvenīre, relieve, heal, remedy (e.g. *gravēdinī*)

medicus, doctor

pharmacopōla, quack

medicāmentum, **medicāmen**, **medicīna**, **remedium**, medicine, remedy; **adhibēre medicīnam aegrōtō**, give medicine to the patient

mulcēre, soothe

recreārī or **convalescere ex morbo** (or **vulnere**), **sē reficere**, recover (from illness)

26.7 sanity, madness

in potestāte mentis esse, be of sound mind;

exīre ex potestāte (sc. **mentis**), become insane

compos mentis, sane

ad sānitātem revertī, recover one's senses

furor, īnsānia, vēsānia, vēcordia, dēmentia, rabiēs, madness
īnsānus, male sānus, vēsānus, vēcors, fānāticus, furiōsus, dēmēns, captus mente, rabidus, rabiōsus, cerrītus, mad, raving
īnsānīre, dēlīrāre, furere, be out of one's mind, rave, be mad; *noun* **dēlīrātīō**

26.8 tear to pieces, maim

lacerāre, mangle, mutilate; *noun* **lacerātīō**
laniāre, dīlaniāre, excarnificāre, tear to pieces; *noun* **laniātus**
mutilus, maimed; *verb* **mutilāre**
truncus, mutilated

27.1 clothing

vestītus, (*late*) **habitus**, dress, clothing
vestis, cultus, clothing, clothes, attire
ōrnātus, attire, apparel
vestīmentum, article of clothing, (*P*) clothing
vestīre, dress, clothe
induere (*usually refl. or pass.*), clothe, put on
amicīre, throw or wrap round (of outer garments)
cōmptus, elegant, adorned
mundus, neat, elegant; *noun* **munditia**
nītīdus, spruce, trim; *noun* **nītor**, elegance
exuere, strip; *vestem pōnere*, undress
nūdus, naked, bare; *verb* **nūdāre, dēnūdāre**, strip, bare

lāna, wool
linteum, linen; *adj.* **linteus**
sēricus, silk (*adj.*); **sērica**, silk garments or silks
textile, cloth, stuff
centō, piece of cloth, rag, patchwork
pannus, piece of cloth, rag; **pannōsus**, tattered

27.2 articles of clothing, etc.

toga, toga (man's gown); *t.* **sordida** *or* **pulla**, worn in mourning; *t.* **virīlis** *or* **pūra**, garb of manhood; *togam virīlem sūmere*, come of age; *t.* **praetexta**, bordered with purple, worn by higher magistrates and free-born children; **togātus**, clad in the toga
amictus, amiculum, outer garment
paenula, (travelling) cloak (with hood)
lacerna, (thick) cloak (with hood)

sagum, coarse woollen mantle
tunica, undergarment; *t.* **tālāris**, reaching to ankles; *t.* **manicāta**, with sleeves
manicae, long sleeves of tunica
palla, stola, robe (ladies' outer garment)
pallium, (Greek) cloak, shawl
chlamys, (Greek) upper garment, often worn over uniform
fascia, band, fillet
monīle, necklace
redimiculūm, necklace, chaplet
torquis, necklace
armilla, bracelet
fibula, clasp, buckle
sinus, fold; used as purse
sūdārium, handkerchief
pilleus, cap; *adj.* **pilleātus**
mitra, turban
calceus, shoe, half-boot
caliga, leather shoe (especially of soldiers)
solea, crepida, sandal
sūtor, shoemaker

28 TOWN

28.1

urbs, town, city; **Urbs**, Rome; *urbem condere, cōstituere*, found a city; *adj.* **urbānus**, of the city, *spec.* Rome; **suburbānus**, near Rome, suburban
cīvis, urbānus, inhabitant of a city, town-dweller, citizen
mūnicipium, free town; **mūniceps, mūnicipālis homō**, inhabitant of such a town; **mūnicipālis**, municipal, provincial
arx, citadel
oppidum, town (*usu. other than Rome*); *adj.* **oppidānus**, belonging to a (country) town, provincial; *as noun* townsman
colere, incolere, habitāre, inhabit; *noun* **incola, cultor**, inhabitant; **habitantēs**, inhabitants; *adj.* **habitābilis**, inhabitable
hominum numerō valēre, be populous
emporium, market town
vīcus, village; quarter (of town); *dimin.* **vīculus; vīcānus**, dwelling in a village
pāgus, district, province, canton
pāgānus, villager, rustic

28.2

moenia, walls (of city or fortress)
mūrus (*usu. P*), wall

pōmērium, space within and without walls of town, kept free from buildings
turris, tower
specula, watch tower
porta, gate; *portam praeccludere*, bar g.
via, road, street; **platea**, **vīcus**, street
angiportum *or* **-us**, alley
forum, public place, market place (*of various kinds*)
spatium, promenade, public place or square;
horti (e.g. *Caesaris*), park, public gardens

sēdēs, **domicilium**, **habitātiō**, dwelling-place; *see* 29.1
obtinēre, occupy, possess
cōnsidere, settle, establish oneself
commigrāre, remove (to another house or town)
praedium, estate (in town or country), farm

29 HOUSE

29.1 houses

domus, **aedēs** (*P*), **tēctum**, house; *domus necessariis rebus instructa*, a well-furnished house; **aediculae**, small house
insula, block of tenements
penātēs, home; **foci**, homes
rēgia [**domus**], royal palace, residence
turris, castle, palace
cūria, town hall; **basilica**, public hall (town hall, exchange)
aula, hall, palace; **porticula**, small hall
suburbānum, villa in suburbs
villa, country house, farm; **vīcus**, country seat;
casa, **tugurium**, cottage, hut; **mapālia** (*P*), huts, tents; **gurgustium**, hovel, hut
dēversōrium, **dēverticulum**, **hospitium**, inn, lodging; *verbs* **dēvertere**, **dēversārī**, put up
caupōna, inn
sarta tēcta, buildings in good repair
mercēdēs habitātiōnum annuae, rent
domī, at home; **forīs**, out of doors
carēre pūblicō, remain at home; **in pūblicō esse**, not to be at home

29.2 structure

aedificāre, build, erect, construct; *nouns*
aedificium, building; **aedificātiō**,
aedificātor

superficiēs, building
exaedificāre, complete the building of
astruere, build on
architectus, architect; *verb* **architectārī**; *noun*
architectūra
fundāmentum, foundation
later, brick
tēctum, roof; ceiling; **sōlārium**, flat roof
tēgula, roofing tile, roof
lacūnar, (panelled) ceiling
solum, floor
pavīmentum, floor, pavement
pinna, pinnacle
fastigium, gable
column, gable, column; **columna**, **pīla**, column, pillar
porticus, collonade, gallery, porch, portico
fornix, vault, arch
pariēs, party-wall; *intrā parietēs*, within four walls *or* by private agreement
faucēs, passage
scālae, staircase; **gradus**, step (of staircase)
contabulātiō, floor, storey
cēnāculum, upper floor
gynaecēum, women's apartments

29.3 entrance

iānuā, (front) door; **valvae**, folding doors;
forēs (*P*), **ōstium**, door; **posticum**, back-door
pulsāre (**ōstium**), knock (at the door); *iānuam effringere*, burst door open
iānitor, doorkeeper
postis, doorpost; **limen**, threshold
cardō, hinge
clāvis, key; **repāgulum**, bolt; **claustra**, bar, lock, bolt
aperīre, **reserere** *plp.*, open; **patēre**, stand open; **claudere**, **operīre**, shut; **includere**, shut in
fenestra, window
lūmināria, shutters

29.4 atrium, etc.

vestībulum, forecourt
tablīnum, office
ātrium, central hall
peristylum, collonade round courtyard
compluvium, skylight
impluvium, basin for rain-water; *also* = compluvium
supellex, furniture

sella, chair, stool; **subsellium, sedile** *plp.*, chair, bench; **scamnum**, stool, bench; **cathedra**, armchair
pulvīnar, couch
pulvīnus, cushion; *dimin.* **pulvillus**
arca, chest; money-box
āra, altar
abacus, sideboard
peripetasma, peristrōma, carpet

29.5 dining

trīclīnium, dining-room, dining-couch; in *trīclīniō* recumbere *OR* discumbere, *OUR* "sit down for a meal"
mēnsa, table, meal; (*mēnsae* [D] *OR* in *convīviō*) accubāre, accumbere, cubāre, recline at table
epulae (*P*), dishes, meal; **ferculum**, course
secunda mēnsa, dessert
ientāculum, breakfast; **prandium**, lunch; invitāre ad p., invite to l.; in *prandiō* accipere *Acpn* ad sē, entertain to l.; *verb* **prandēre**; N.B. **prānsus**, having lunched; **cēna**, dinner; *cēnam dare Dpn*, entertain at table; *verb* **cēnāre**
Acpn **adhibēre epulīs** *OR* **cēnae**, *OR* **invītāre ad cēnam**, invite to dinner
convīvium, banquet, dinner-party; c. *instruere*, get ready a b.; *convīviō* *OR* in c. *interesse*, attend b.; c. *renuere*, decline invitation to dinner
convīva, guest
umbra, companion (of important guest)
ministrāre (e.g. *pōcula*, *bibere*), serve (at table)
daps, epulum, public dinner, solemn feast; banquet
epulārī, feast
lautus, sumptuous, luxurious
lūxus, lūxuria, luxury; *adj.* **lūxuriōsus**

29.6 kitchen

culīna, kitchen
cella, storeroom; c. *penāria*, s. for provision; c. *oleāria*, s. for oil
carnārium, larder
vās, utensil, dish
urna, jar, bucket
coquus, cook; *verb* **coquere**, cook, boil, stew
crūdus, uncooked, raw
torrēre, roast, bake
assum, roast meat, e.g. *assum vitulinum*
frīgere, fry

fervēre, boil (*intrans.*)
verū, spit, broach
focus, fire-place
furnus, oven, bakehouse
vatillum, chafing-dish
popīna, cookshop

29.7 food

vīctus, nourishment, diet
alimentum, nūtrīmentum, cibus, penus, food; *corpus cibō cūrāre*, take food; *cibum tibi appōnō*, set food before you; *adj.* **penārius**
ēscā, solid food; **ēsculentus**, edible
edere, eat; **exedere**, eat up, consume; **vēsī** *Ab*, **vīvere** *Ab*, live on, feed on; **dēvorāre**, **comedere**, consume, devour; **adedere**, nibble
edāx, devouring, voracious
famēs, hunger; *famem dēpellere* *OR* *explēre*, satisfy h.; *fame perīre* *OR* *ēnecārī* *OR* *consūmī*, starve
ēsūrīre, hunger
īcīūnus, hungry, fasting; *noun* **īcīūnium**
inedia, fasting (*noun*), starvation
aqua, water; *see* 9.1
satur, sated
gula, appetite, gluttony
ligūrītīō, fondness for dainties
helluārī, guzzle

carō, meat
pānis, bread; **pīstor**, baker
placenta, cake
crūstum, pastry; **crūstulum**, small pastry, confectionery
puls, porridge
sāl, salt
piper, pepper
prōmulsis, savoury as first course

lanx, dish
patella, pan, plate
patina, dish, pan
pēlvis, basin
sportella, sportula, little basket for food; its contents

29.8 drink

pōtiō, drink, beverage

bibere, drink, **pōtare**, drink, tipple; N.B.

pōtus, *usu.* being drunk (intoxicated), *also* having drunk *and* having been drunk; **pōtus**, drinking; **pōtātiō**, drinking bout; **pōtātor**, toper

propīnāre *Dpn*, drink to

ēbrius, **vīnolentus**, tipsy; *nouns* **ēbrietās**, **vīnolentia**; *adj.* **vīnōsus**, given to drink, bibulous

crāpula, intoxication

tēmulentus, drunk

combibō, **cōmissātor**, **compōtor**, boon-companion

effundere, pour out

haurīre, drain

sitis, thirst; *sitim explēre*, quench t.; *verb* **sitīre**

puteus, well; *see* 9.2

dōlium, large jar

hydria, **ūrceus**, jug (for water)

lagoena, jug, flagon

ampulla, flask

lac, milk; *see* 8.3

vīnum, wine; *see* 22.5; *adj.* **vīnārius**;

vīnārium, wine-pot

mustum, grape juice, must; **mulsum**, honeyed wine

faex, dregs

acētum, vinegar

cūpa, cask

crātēr, mixing bowl

miscēre, mix, blend

merus, unmixed, pure

pōculum, **calix**, **scyphus**, **cibōrium**, cup, goblet

cyathus, ladle (for wine)

cūpa, cask

cella vīnāria, **apothēca**, storeroom for wine

29.9 bedroom

cubiculum, bedroom, rest-room


cubīle, **lectus**, **torus**, bed, couch; *in lectō iacēre*, lie in bed; *lectō tenērī*, be confined to one's bed

cūnae, **cūnābula**, cradle

strātum, coverlet, blanket, pillow

strāgula vestis, coverlet

discumbere, lie down

 **dormītum** *or* **cubitum** *or* **ad quiētem ire** *or* **trādere sē quiētī**, **ad somnum** *or* **ad dormiendum proficīsci**, go to bed

sōpīre, **cōnsōpīre**, lull to sleep, make to sleep; **sōpītus**, asleep

obdormīre, **obdormīscere**, **dormītāre**, fall asleep

dormīre, **cubāre**, **quiēscere**, sleep

balneum, **balneāria**, bathroom; **balneae**, public baths; *adj.* **balneārius**; **balneātor**, bath-keeper

alveus, bathing-tub

piscīna, bathing-pool

lavārī, **aquā perfundī**, **perluī** (e.g. *in flūminibus*), bathe

somnus, sleep; *somnō prīvāre* *Acpn*, *somnum Dpn* *adimere*, rob of sleep; *animus somnō relaxātus*, refreshed by s.

excubāre, sleep out of doors

somnium, dream; **somnīre**, **in somnīs vidēre** *Actg*, dream

expergīsci, awake

excitāre, arouse

vigilāre, be awake, not sleep, be wakeful, keep watch; *v. noctēs*, not to sleep at night;

vigilia, waking, watching

insomnia, sleeplessness; **somnum capere nōn posse**, suffer from insomnia

noctem pervigilāre, stay awake all night

ārea, yard, court

in prōpatulō, in the open court

hortus, garden; *see* 22.3

30 GOVERNMENT

30.1

cīvitās, state; *gubernātiō cīvitātis*, government of the s.

pūblicus, public; *pūblica causa*, affair of the state

rēspūblica, constitution, nation, politics, public life

moderātor, *or* **gubernātor rēipūblīcae**, ruler of the state

gubernātiō civitātis, government
īnstitūta et lēgēs, lēgēs patriae, the constitution
rempūblicam temperāre lēgibus, govern (a state) by laws
commoda pūblica (P), the interests of the state
sapientia cōstituendae reīpūblīcae, rērum cīvīlium cōgnitiō et prūdētia, statesmanship
sciēns reīpūblīcae gerendae, a clever statesman
diciō (SN not in use), rule, sovereignty, authority
auctōritās, imperium, authority; *imperium* singulāre, sole a.; *auctōritātem* interpōnere, assert a.
māiestās, majesty, dignity, sovereignty of the state
dīgnitās, dignity, high rank
nōbilitās, distinction, renown
augustus, majestic, venerable
īnsīgnis, praeclārus, nōbilis, distinguished, famous; **nōbilitāre**, make famous

30.2

status (cīvitātis), form of government
omnium summa rērum, supreme power
imperium, empire; government; supreme power; i. singulāre, autocracy; i. obtinēre *or* tenēre, hold command; *Dpn* summam imperiī permittere, entrust with supreme powers; summam imperiī tenēre, have supreme command; *imperiō potīrī*, gain supreme power; *imperiō praesidēre*, be president; *novīs imperiīs studēre*, work for a change of government;
imperiōsus, mighty; **imperāre**, govern
prīnceps, imperātor, emperor; **imperātrīx**, empress
prīncipātus, supreme command, *later* sovereignty
rēgnum, kingdom; sovereignty; *Dpn* r. dēferre, make king; r. occupāre, be king; r. excipere, succeed to the throne
interrēgnum, interregnum (*with* **interrēx**)
rēx, king; r. fierī, ascend the throne; *rēgem* reducere, restore k. to throne; *rēgem rēgnō* spoliāre, dethrone k.; *adjs.* **rēgius, rēgālis**; *rēgia potestās*, royal power; **rēgāle**
genus cīvitātis, monarchy
rēgīna, queen
vicārius rēgnī, viceroy
rēgulus, chief, chieftain

regere, rule (*intrans.*)
rēgnāre, reign
praeesse D, rule over
īnsīgnia rēgia, regalia; **solium**, throne; **scēptrum**, sceptre; **purpura**, royal (crimson) cloak
satelles, lifeguard, attendant, bodyguard
stīpātiō, retinue, suite
tyrannus, tyrant, despot; *adj.* **tyrannicus**
tyrannis, dominātiō, dominātus, tyranny

30.3

senātus, senate; in *senātum legere*, elect to S.; in *senātum venīre or pervenīre*, become a senator; *ex or dē senātū* ēicere, *dē senātū* movēre, *senātū* prohibēre, remove from the S.; *dēsciscere ā senātū*, cease to be a senator
decuria, division (one-tenth) of senate
ōrdō senātōrius, Patrēs Cōnscriptī, patrēs, the senators
senātor, senator; **tunica lāticlāvia**, senator's robe of state, with broad purple stripes
cūria, senate house
senātum convocāre or cōgere, call a meeting; **senātum mittere or dīmittere**, adjourn meeting
referre ad senātum Actg or dē Abtg, make a motion in the senate
cēnsēre, give an opinion, vote; decree
cernere, decide
sententia, vote; (*pedibus*) *īre in* sententiam, vote for a motion
discessiō, division; *discessiōnem facere*, divide the senate (on a motion)
īnfrequentia senātūs, absence of quorum in senate
dēcernere, ēdīcere, decree, decide; *noun* **dēcrētum**, decree
senātūs cōnsultum or auctōritās, decree of senate

30.4

honor, office, distinction, official dignity; *honōrem petere*, seek office
status, rank, status (political or civil)
ascendere in summum locum cīvitātis, attain the highest dignity in the state
mūnus, post, function; *mūnere fungī*, administer, discharge an office
magistrātus, civil office, magistracy; *magistrate; in magistrātū esse, manēre*,

be, remain in office; magistrātum habēre (obtinēre), hold office

potestās, (magisterial) power, authority
dictātor, **magister populī**, dictator; *adj.*

dictātōrius; **dictātūra**, dictatorship;
dictātūrā gerere, be dictator

● **cōsul**, consul; *rempūblicam cōsulibus* permittere, give the consuls unlimited powers; *Acpn cōsulem facere* (reficere), elect (re-elect) c.; c. vitiōsus, irregularly elected c.; *adj.*
cōsulāris; **cōsulātus**, office of c., consulship; *cōsulātum petere*, *adipīscī*, obtain, inire; *cōsulātū fungī*; *abire*, sē abdicāre cōsulātū, resign the c.; *cōsulātū perāctō*, on the completion of his consulship

praetor, praetor; *adj.* **praetōrius**; **praetūra**, praetorship

cēnsor, censor; *adj.* **cēnsōrius**; **cēnsūra**, censorship

aedīlis, aedile; *the aedīlēs were curūlēs or plēbēī*; *adj.* **aedīlicius**

quaestor, quaestor; *adj.* **quaestōrius**;
quaestūra, quaestorship

tribūnus, tribune; *adj.* **tribūnīcius**;
tribūnātus, tribuneship; *dēpellere Acpn* tribūnātū, drive out of the tribuneship

sella curūlis, official seat (used by consuls, praetors and curule aediles)

tribūnal, platform on which seats of magistrates were placed

accēnsus, **appāritor**, minor state official
stator, magistrate's attendant

lictor, licitor

fascēs, rods and axe

ad repūblicam accēdere or **sē cōferre**,
repūblicam capessere, **forum attingere**,
enter political life; **dē forō dēcēdere**,
abandon political life

privātus, citizen not holding public office

honōribus dēfūctus, one who has held office

30.5 elections

(**honōrem**) **petere**, seek office, stand for, be candidate for; **petītor**, candidate; **petītiō**, candidature

(**nōmen**) **profitērī**, give in one's name
candidātus, candidate (in "toga candida"); *mē* candidātum cōsulātus profiteor,
declare that I am standing for the consulship

ambitiō, canvassing; *verb* **ambīre**

comitia, public assembly

creāre, elect

cooptāre, co-opt; *noun* **cooptātiō**

suffrāgium, right of voting; vote; voting tablet; *s. ferre*, *suffrāgārī*, give one's vote; *s. inire*, proceed to vote

refrāgārī, vote against, oppose

tabella, voting tablet

pūnctum, vote; *pūncta ferre*, gain votes
manum porrigere, hold up hand (in voting)

diribēre, sort voting tablets; *nouns* **diribitiō**,
diribitor

renūntiāre, announce result

repulsa, defeat; *repulsam ferre*, be rejected

30.6

cīvis, citizen; *bonus (optimus) c.*, a true patriot; *c. ācerrimus*, an ardent patriot;
adjs. **cīvilis**, **cīvicus**, civil, civic; **cīviliter**, like a good citizen

pietās, **amor in patriam**, patriotism
bene dē repūblicā sentīre, be patriotic

populāris, fellow-countryman

peregrīnus, alien (not Roman citizen)

externus, foreign, strange

● **caput**, civil rights, status; *capite sē* dēminuere or *dēminuī*, lose civil rights; *capitis dēminūtiō*, loss of civil rights
cīvitās, citizenship; *dōnāre Acpn* cīvitāte, bestow c. on one; *recipere* or *ascribere Acpn* in cīvitātem, admit one to the right of c.; *largīre Dpn* cīvitātem, confer citizenship; *adimere Dpn* cīvitātem, deprive one of c.

a(d)sciscere, admit (as citizen)

in integrum restituere, restore to full rights

ascribere, enrol; **cōnscriptus**, on the roll;

cēnsus, register, burgess roll

nota, brand, stigma, *nota cēnsōria*, note of censure (in censor's list)

relēgāre, banish (without loss of civil rights or property)

exsul, exile; **exsilium**, exile, banishment;
exsiliō afficere, punish with exile; in *exsilium ēicere*, *exigere*, *expellere*, *pellere*, banish; in *exsilium ire*, *pergere*, *proficīscī*, go into e.; **exsulāre**, be an exile, live in exile; *dē exsiliō* *revocāre*, *reducere*, recall from e.

ex patriā ēicere, **ā patriā expellere**, **cīvitāte** **exturbāre**, expel from the country; **ēiectiō**, banishment

prōscribere, outlaw, proscribe; **prōscriptus**, outlaw; **prōscriptiō**, outlawry

solum vertere or **mūtāre**, go into exile

mūtārī cīvitāte, be banished

extermināre, interdicere *Dpn aquā et ignī, cīvitate or patriā pellere*, banish

30.7

nōbilis, generōsus, noble; *nōbillī genere*

nātus, of noble family

nōbilitās, high birth, aristocracy

clārus, illustrious; **clāritās**, renown

celeber, renowned, famous; *noun* **celebritās**;
verb **celebrāre**

summō locō nātus, of a noble family; **honestō**

locō nātus, of good family

humilibus parentibus or obscurīs māiōribus

nātus or ortus, of humble birth

humilitās, obscuritās, humble birth

īgnōbilis, obscure, of low birth; *noun*

īgnōbilitās

sordēs, low social status; **sordidus**, of mean birth, humble

patricius, patrician; a patrician; **optimās**, aristocratic; *P*, aristocracy; **optimī cīvēs**, optimates; **prīmōrēs** *P*, nobles, patricians; **procerēs, prīmī (or prīncipēs) cīvītātis**, leading men, nobles

bona ratiō, conservative party or attitude

equitēs *P*, **ōrdō equester**, capitalist class

bonī, men of substance, the upper class

assiduus, one who pays tribute (citizen of upper classes)

homō ingenuus, freeborn man

populārēs *P*, people's party

aura populāris, favour of the masses

plēbs, plēbēs, ōrdō plēbēius, plebeian order, commons; **plēbēius**, plebeian; **plēbēcula**, rabble

prōlētārius, proletarian, citizen of lowest classes

tenuiōrēs, tunicātī, people of the lower classes

aerārius, member of lowest class of citizens

capite cēnsī, assessed as persons merely, not according to income, but ability to labour

novus homō, homō ā sē ortus, a self-made man, upstart

factiō, party, class, faction; *adj.* **factiōsus**

30.8 revenue

aerārium, publicum, pecūnia pūblica, treasury, exchequer

fiscus, state treasury

vectīgal, tax, toll; *v.* **impōnere, tax**; **exigere**, claim, exact; **pendere, pay**; **locāre**, farm out; **dē vectīgālibus eximere, or levāre vectīgālī**, exempt from taxation

stipendium, tax (payable in money)

portōrium, duty on imported and exported goods; **portitor**, custom-house officer

tribūtum, tribute, military tax; *t.* **impōnere**, impose *t.*; *t.* **cōnferre, facere, pendere, pay t.**

immūnis, exempt from taxation; *noun* **immūnitās**

agrōs liberāre, free lands from taxation

pūblicānus, tax-collector

manceps, redēptor, contractor

locātiō, contract for right of collecting taxes

redēptiō, farming of the revenue

pūblicāre, make public property, confiscate

prōscribere, publish (a man) as having forfeited his property, punish with confiscation, confiscate

addicere bona Gpn in pūblicum, confiscate

30.9 offences against state

iniūriae pūblīcae, offences against the state

in rēpūblicā peccāre, offend against the state

coniūrāre contrā *Ac*, enter into a conspiracy against; **coniūrātiō**, plot, conspiracy;

prīncipēs coniūrātiōnis, heads of

conspiracy; *c.* **contrā rempūblicam**;

coniūrātiōnem invēstigāre, be on the

track of a *c.*; **coniūrātī**, conspirators;

cōnsciūs (scelerum), accomplice

cōnspirāre, plot together

cōnsēnsiō, coitiō, conspīrātiō, conspiracy

novae rēs, revolution; *novīs rēbus studēre*, be eager for revolution

tumultus, mōtus, uproar, civil war, sudden rising, disturbance

sēditiō, mutiny, insurrection, *see* 37.3;

sēditiōsus, factious, disaffected

sēcēdere, secede, revolt; *noun* **sēcēssiō**

dēficere ab *Ab*, revolt from; **dēfectiō**, revolt, rebellion

dē occupandō rēgnō mōlīrī, strive to usurp the government

malī or improbī (cīvēs), unpatriotic citizens **contrā rēgem (rempūblicam) arma sūmere**,

be a rebel; **male sentīre**, be disaffected

cīvis impiūs, parricīda patriae, traitor;

parricīdium patriae, treason

perduelliō, treason; *perduelliōnis or māiestātis reus*, traitor

lēx māiestātis, law relating to treason

māiestātem minuere or laedere, be guilty of high treason; *māiestātis accūsāre*, accuse of treason; *māiestātis damnāre*, convict of treason

perduelliōnis iūdicium, trial for treason

31 RELIGION

rēs dīvīnae or sacrae, religion

31.1

rēs dīvīna (also *P*), worship, sacrifice
religiō, piety; religious scruple; (*S or P*) religion

sacra (*P*), worship; *s. facere*, engage in worship; **magister sacrōrum**, high priest

mystēria, secret worship; *adj. mysticus*
deus, dīvus, caelestis (*usu. P*), god; **dea, dīva**, goddess

dīvinitās, divinity

ambrosia, food of the gods; **nectar**, drink of the gods

nympha, nymph

superī, gods above

inferī, dwellers below, the dead; **Mānēs**, spirits of the dead; gods of the lower world

dīvīnus, caelestis, divine

immortālis, undying; *noun* **immortālītās**

nūmen, divine power, divine will, deity

sānctus, holy, inviolable; *noun* **sānctitās**;

sacer, sacred, consecrated; accursed

sollemnis, religious

rītus, caerimōnia, sollemne, rite, ceremony

rīte, with proper rites

pompa, solemn or festal procession

sacrum, sacred vessel

capēdō, sacrificial bowl

venerārī, worship; **colere**, worship (by rites); *nouns* **venerātiō, cultus**; **adōrāre**, worship, implore

obsecrāre *Ac*, **supplicāre** *D*, implore;

supplex, suppliant

adīre deōs, approach the gods as a suppliant

precārī, invocāre, pray, invoke; **precēs** (*P*), prayer; *adhibēre p. diīs immortalibus*, pray to the gods; **precātiō**, prayer

plācāre, appease

vōtum, prayer

celebrāre, solemnise, keep a festival

pius, pious, devout; *noun* **pietās**

religiō, piety, faith; **religiōsus**, pious

fēstus, festal, solemn; *diem fēstum agere or agitāre*, keep holiday

diēs fāstus, day on which business could be done; **diēs nefāstus**, day on which no official business could be transacted

vovēre, dēvovēre, vow, dedicate; **vōtum** (*usu. P*), vow, solemn promise; votive offering; *vōta facere or nūcupāre*, make vows; *v. reddere or solvere*, fulfil *v.*; **vōtīvus**, promised by vow, given in fulfilment of vow; **dēvōtiō**, consecration, vow

sacrāre, cōsecrāre, dicāre, dēdicāre, dedicate; *noun* **cōsecrātiō**

inaugurāre, consecrate, e.g. *templum*

mactāre, dedicate (as offering)

profānus, unconsecrated, profane

polluere, desecrate

31.2

cultus deōrum, sacra pūblica, public worship
iūs dīvīnum, religious law

templum, aedēs, fānum, dēlūbrum (*usu. P*), temple, sanctuary

sacellum, sanctuary, chapel

sacrārium, shrine, sanctuary

āra, altar; **tūs, suffimentum**, incense; **libāre**, pour out as an offering; **libāmentum**, libation

simulācrum, imāgō, image, statue

sacerdōtium, priesthood

pontifex, pontiff; **pontificātus**, pontiffship; *adj.* **pontificālis**

sacerdōs, priest, priestess; **flāmen**, priest (of particular deity)

antistes, antistita, high priest(ess), overseer of temple

collēgium, sodālītās, sodālicium, college of priests; **sodālis**, member of such a college

virgō Vestālis, Vestal virgin

sacrificium, sacrifice; *verb* **sacrificāre**;

sacrum facere, perform sacrifice; **hostia, victima**, animal sacrificed, victim; **mactāre, immolāre**, sacrifice, immolate, worship;

lūstrāre, purify (by sacrifice); *noun*

lūstrātiō; litāre, sacrifice under favourable conditions

31.3

sacra prīvāta, household worship

Lār, tutelary deity

Larārium, household shrine

Penātēs (*P*), household deities

genius, guardian spirit

31.4 impiety; superstition

impius, nefārius, irreligious, ungodly; *nouns*

impietās, neglegentia deōrum, nūllus deōrum metus, irreligion

sacrilegus, sacrilegious, impious; *also noun*

violāre deōs immortalēs, be impious

superstitiō, nimia or prāva or perversa

religiō or religiō alone, inānis timor

deōrum, superstition; *superstitiōne*

imbūtus, steeped in s.; *adj.* **superstitiōsus,**

religiōsus

lamia, witch

larvae, lēmūrēs, ghosts

31.5 prophecy

vātēs, prophet, prophetess, seer, bard

sāga, prophetess

augur, diviner, soothsayer; *verb* **augurārī;**

augurium, augurātiō, augury, divination

haruspex, sortilegus, soothsayer

hostia, victim; *exta (n P)*, entrails

auspex, bird seer; *verb* **auspicārī**, take

auspices; **auspicium**, auspices, guidance

dīvīnāre, ōminārī, portendere, praecinere,

praenūntiāre, vāticinārī, prophesy; *nouns*

dīvīnātiō, vāticinātiō

praedicere, foretell; *nouns* **praedictiō,**

praedictum

fātidicus, prophesying

ōrāculum, oracle

ōmen, prōdigium, mōnstrum, portentum,

sign, token, portent; *ōmen dētestārī*, avert an omen

faustus, fēlix, propitious, lucky; **īnfēlix,**

laevus, sinister, unfortunate, unlucky;

dīrus, ill-omened, portentous; **obscēnum**

ōmen, evil omen, portent; **bonīs, secundīs**

avibus, with a good omen; in a happy hour;

opposite avī malā; **auspicia secunda**

(**īnfēlicia**), good (bad) omens

praepes, auspicious (of birds in augury)

praerogātiva, good omen

obnūntiāre, announce an ill omen

prōcūrāre, avert ill omen by sacrifice; *noun*

prōcūrātiō

praesāgiēns malōrum animus, a (gloomy)

forebodying; **praesentīre**, have a foreboding

32 CHANCE; FATE

32.1

fortūna, cāsus, fors, chance, fortune;

lūdibria fortūnae, playthings of fate;

tēla fortūnae, shafts of fate; *vulnere*

fortūnae percussus, stricken by

misfortune; *vaga f.*, fickle f.; *caecus*

cāsus, blind chance; *māgnus cāsus*, pure

chance; *adj.* **fortuītus**, accidental

forte, fortuītō, cāsū, by chance; *forte ac*

cāsū, by mere chance

sors, fātum, lot, fate, destiny

fātālis, destined, fated

sors, lot, decision by lot; *tollere sortēs*,

draw lots; **sortīrī**, cast or draw lots; **sortītō,**

by lot; **sortītīō**, drawing of lots

sitella, small urn for drawing lots

ālea, die; *āleam iacere*, throw a die

tessera, die (with 6 numbers); *tesserās*

iacere

tālus, die (with 4 numbers); *tālīs lūdere*

Venus, best, *and canis*, worst throw of dice

occāsiō, facultās, opportunity

● **accidere, ēvenīre**, happen, turn out; *accidit or ēvenit, ut adessem*, I happened to be present

intervenīre, happen, occur

temeritās, chance, accident

contingere, obtingere, obvenīre, fall to the lot of, befall

quicumque ventī erunt, whatever may happen

ēventus, ēventum, prōventus, exitus, result, issue

sic placitum (scil. dīs), such was the dispensation of heaven

32.2 favourable

fēlicitās, prospera (flōrēns, secunda)

fortūna, rēs prosperae (secundae),

prosperitās, good fortune

rēs flōrentissimae, flourishing circumstances

rēbus ad nostram voluntātem fluentibus,

things going as we desire

fēlix, fortunātus, fortunate, lucky, well-off

rēs mihi succēdit (or without rēs), I am successful

successus, good result, success

peropportūnē accidit, ut, it is most fortunate that

ēvādere, turn out, result

omnia prosperē eveniunt, prōcēdunt or succēdunt, all goes well
prōficere, succeed, get on well
pulchrē est mihi, all goes well with me
mihi omnia iūcunda cecidērunt, all has turned out well for me
deōrum beneficiō accidit, ut..., happily, by heaven's favour
cōsiliō deōrum, providentially
auspicātō, at a favourable time

32.3 unfavourable

rēs adversae, fortūna adversa or afflicta, adversity
extrēmā fortūnā, in greatest distress
calamitās, cāsus, clādēs, fātum, infelicitās, perniciēs, misfortune, disaster; calamitāte percussus, hit by m.; *adj.* **calamitōsus**
fulmina fortūnae, blows of misfortune, calamities
ictus novae calamitātis, blow of a fresh misfortune
sī gravius quid accidat, in case of misfortune
sē fortūna inclināverat, there was a change for the worse
incommodum, unfortunate event; importāre i., cause trouble
labor, hardship, trouble; **labōriōsus**, harassed
infēlix, ill-starred, unfortunate
perniciōsus, fūnestus, fatal, baleful
male evenīre, turn out badly, go ill
āctum est dē Ab, it is all over with; *dē summā rē āctum est*, all is lost

33 PROPERTY, TRADE

33.1 property

rēs, bona (P), fortūnae (P), pecūnia, property, goods
proprius, own, peculiar, personal, characteristic
rēs familiāris (or prīvāta), private property; *rem familiārem neglegere*, mismanage one's estate; *r. f. dissipāre*, squander
patrimōnium, inherited estate; *p. effundere, dēvorāre, profundere*, squander one's inheritance
vectīgal, income; *v. māgnum (tenue)*, large (slender) i.; **praediōrum frūctus**, income from estates
possidēre, possess, own; **possessiō**, holding, occupation; *in possessiōnem venīre or*

proficiscī, come into possession;
possessiōnem bonōrum Dpn dare or tradere, give one possession of goods;
possessor, holder (not necessarily owner)
possidēre, take possession of
dominus, poet. erus, master, owner, proprietor; **dominium**, ownership
potīrī, get possession of
comparāre, procure; *noun comparatiō*
praedia obligāta, mortgaged; *opposite solūta*
ūsūcapere, acquire possession by long use; *noun ūsūcapiō*

33.2 money

pecūnia, money; *māgnae pecūniae*, large sums of money; *pecūniās erogāre*, spend m.; *pecūniam dēvorāre*, effundere, lacerāre, squander m.; *noun effusiō*;
pecūniās exigere, exact payment;
pecūnia vī expressa, extorted m.;
pecūniam expedire, gain m.; *Dpn pecūniam numerāre or repraesentāre*, pay down; *pecūnia numerāta*, cash; *numerātō solvere*, pay in cash;
repraesentatiō, payment in cash; **(rem) solvere, pecūniam pendere or solvere or dissolvere, pēnsitāre, pay; persolvere**, pay completely, in full
pēnsiō, instalment
nummus, coin, money; *in suis nummīs multis esse or versārī*, have plenty of (ready) money; *in nummīs habēre*, have in ready money
aes, money
talentum = 60 minae; **mina** = 100 dēnārii; **dēnārius**, silver coin (about 8d.)
sēstertius, nummus, sesterce (about 2d.); **sēstertia** = 1000 sesterces; **sēstertium** = 100,000 sesterces
ās, penny; **sextāns**, farthing, mite
monēta, mint
loculī, casket (with compartments), purse
fiscus, money-bag
sacculus, marsuppiūm, pouch, purse
crumēna, purse (hung round neck)
zōna, money-belt
arca, money-chest, safe
thēca nummāria, money-box
ad nummum convenit, it is correct to a penny
cōdex acceptī et expēnsī, account-book of income and expenditure

33.3 rich/poor

rich

dīves, rich; **dīvitiae**, riches; **dīvitiīs** *Acpn* augēre, enrich
opēs (*P*), wealth, resources; **opibus** (*or bonīs or dīvitiīs or pecūniā*) abundāre *or flōrēre or valēre*, be very well off, be very wealthy
rēs flōrentēs, affluent circumstances
facultātēs (*P*), riches
opulentus, wealthy; *noun* **opulentia**
locuplēs, **pecūniōsus**, **bene nummātus**, wealthy; **locuplētāre**, enrich
abundāns, wealthy; *noun* **abundantia**
thēsaurus, treasure
gaza, treasure, riches
pecūniae cupidus, greedy for money; *see also* 38.9
frūgālis, thrifty

poor

tenuis, poor; *t. fortuna*, humble means; **tenuitās**, poverty
pecūniae (*G*) **angustiae** (*P*), straitened means
abiectae rēs, reduced circumstances
difficultās nummāria, lack of ready money
pauper, poor; *noun* **paupertās**
egēns, **egēnus**, destitute; *noun* **egestās**
inopia, need, indigence, privation; *inopiā labōrāre or premī*, be crushed by want; *adj.* **inops**
pēnūria, want, scarcity
egēre (*or indigēre*) **pecūniae** (*or pecūniā*), **carēre pecūniā**, lack money
mendīcus, *f* **mulier mendīca**, beggar; **mendīcītās**, indigence; *verb* **mendīcāre**

33.4 give/receive

give, lend; credit

dare, give; *see* 34
mūtuum, loan
dō tibi pecūniam mūtuum, crēdō tibi pecūniam, lend you money
pecūniās apud tē occupō, lend you money on interest
dare ūtendum, lend; **fēnus**, interest on money lent; **fēnerārī**, lend on interest
sors, invested capital
ūsūra, interest
repscere, demand back
fidēs, credit; *f. angusta*, low credit
crēditor, creditor
tocullīō, usurer

receive, borrow, owe

accipere, receive; *in acceptum tibi referō*, place to your credit, am indebted to you for
mūtuarī, **pecūniās mūtūās sūmere ab Ab, mūtūō sūmere, rogāre ūtendum, accipere ūtendum**, borrow
pecūniās sūmere mūtūās, get a loan
impendium, interest on a loan
dēbere, owe; **dēbitor**, debtor; **dēbitum**, debt
aes aliēnum, debt; *a. a. contrahere (or facere)*, run up a debt; *in aere aliēnō esse*, be in debt; *ex aere aliēnō labōrāre*, be burdened with debt; *aere aliēnō obruī*, be over the ears in debt; *in aere aliēnō vacillāre*, stagger under a load of debt; *aere aliēnō dēmersus*, deep in debt; *Acpn aere aliēnō obstringere*, bring into debt; *Dpn aes aliēnum dōnāre*, cancel a debt; *sē aere aliēnō exserere or levāre or liberāre*, aere aliēnō exīre, get out of debt
obaerātus, in debt; *as noun* debtor
bonum nōmen, a good debtor
nōmen (*or crēditās pecūniās or aes aliēnum*) **solvere or dissolvere or exsolvere, nōmina liberāre**, discharge a debt
versūra, borrowing of money to pay a loan
solvendō nōn esse, be insolvent
bonam cōpiam ēiūrāre, swear that one is insolvent
dēcoquere, run through one's fortune
conturbāre (*also with ratiōnem or ratiōnēs*), become bankrupt
homō dīrutus, dēcoctor, bankrupt
ergastulum, workhouse for debtors
nectī ob aes aliēnum, be imprisoned or enslaved for debt; **nexum inīre**, become enslaved through debt

33.5 trade

mercātus, trade; *verb* **mercārī**
mercātūra, trade; *m. māgna et cōpiōsa*, wholesale *t.*; *mercātūram facere*, trade
quaestus, trade, calling
negōtiātīō, wholesale business, banking business
negōtiātor, merchant, banker; *verb* **negōtiārī**; **argentārius**, banker; **mercātor**, merchant, (wholesale) dealer; **caupō**, retailer, shopkeeper; innkeeper; **īnstitōr**, **tabernārius**, small dealer

selling

vendere, sell; *rēctē* v., s. dear; male *or* *parvō pretiō* v., s. at a sacrifice;
vēditāre, try to sell; **vēditor**, seller;
vēditiō, sale, auction
exigere, demand
partem octāvam pretiū concēdere, allow a discount of 12 1/2 per cent
vēnīre, be sold
licēre, be on sale
vēnālis, for sale
auctiō, auction; *auctiōnem prōscribere*, announce sale; **prōscriptiō**, public notice of sale; **ātria auctiōnāria**, sale-rooms
pecūniam redigere, get money by selling
actum, pactiō, compectum (*also compactum*), **conventum**, agreement, contract; **pacīscī**, make a bargain; *adv.*
compectō, according to agreement; **pactor**, negotiator
ratum facere or habēre, ratify, approve
stipulārī, stipulate, bargain; *noun stipulātiō*
opus locāre, give out a contract; *opus condūcere*, take a contract
manceps, redēptor, contractor
aestimāre, set a price on; *māgnī a.*, value highly; **aestimātiō**, valuation; **aestimātor**, appraiser
prō nihilō dūcere Actg, set no value on
pretium, price; *p. cōstituere or cōnficere*, fix p.; *māgnī (parvī) pretiī esse*, be worth much (little)
impēdium, cost, expense
ratiō, reckoning; *ratiōnem reddere*, render account; *ratiōnēs putāre cum Abpn*, settle accounts with; *r. acceptōrum et datōrum*, credit and debit account

merx, vēnālia (P), goods, wares, merchandise
forum, mercātus, macellum (for provisions),
emporium, market, market-place
nūndinae, market day, weekly market
nūndinātiō, trafficking, business
taberna, shop
argentāria, bank; *argentāriam facere*, be a money-changer
mēnsārius, public banker
societās, joint-stock company
socius, partner

pecūniam in praediō pōnere, invest money in an estate

buying

emere, buy; **redimere**, buy back; **ēmtor**, purchaser; **ēmtiō**, purchase; **redēmtiō**, buying back
nūndinārī, chaffer; buy
solvere, rem or pecūniam solvere, pay
cārus, dear; *noun cāritās*
male emere, buy dear; **impēnsō pretiō emere**, buy at a high price
pretiōsus, costly
vīlis, cheap; **vīli**, cheaply; *noun vilitās*
bene emere, buy cheap
grātis, grātuītō, for nothing, gratuitously; *grātis vīvere*, live rent-free
cōnstāre, cost; *nimiō cōnstat*, costs too much
sūmptus, expense, cost; *sūmptum in Actg* *insūmere*, spend money on; *adj.*
sūmptuōsus, expensive, costly
impēdium, impēnsa, expense, expenditure; *impēnsam impōnere Dtg*, spend money on; *sine impēdiō, nūllā impēnsā*, without cost
auctiō, auction; **licērī**, bid (at an auction); *contrā licērī*, outbid
frūctus, lucrum, gain, profit; *Actg in lucrīs pōnere*, count as gain; *verb lucrārī*, **lucrifacere, merēre**, earn, gain; **quaestus**, profit (in trade), gain; *adj. quaestuōsus*, profitable, eager for gain; **ēmolumentum**, advantage, gain; **compendium**, saving, gain (through saving)
pecūniam in Gtg ēmtiōne cōnsūmere, invest money in the purchase of;
damnum, iactūra, loss; *d. or iactūram facere*, incur loss; *d. ēmtōrī praestāre*, guarantee purchaser against loss; *nōn māgnā iactūrā factā*, at no great expense
dētrīmentum, damage, loss; *d. capere*, incur loss
frūctūs industriae perdere, lose the fruits of industry

33.6 inheritance

testāmentum, will; *t. improbum*, invalid w.; *t. facere, scribere or cōnscribere*, draw up a w.; *t. rumpere or irritum facere*, revoke a w.; *t. obsignāre*, affix seal to w.; *testāmenta subicere*, forge w.; *testāmenta falsa suppōnere*, substitute a forged w.
tabulae testātae, will
ēlogium, codicil
lēgāre, bequeathe

lēgātum (*usu. P*), legacy

intestātus, intestate

hērēs, heir, heiress; *h. esse Gpn or Dpn*, be

heir to; *h. ex asse, sole h.*; *Mārcum*

hērēdem facere, instituere, scribere,

make M. one's heir

hērēditās, inheritance; *hērēditātem adire,*

capere, cōsequī, relinquere; *adj.*

hērēditārius

herctum ciēre, divide an inheritance

patrimōnium, estate inherited from father; see 33.1

exhērēdāre, disinherit; **exhērēs**, disinherited

33.7 slavery/freedom

slavery

servitium, servitūs, slavery; *esse in*

servitūte, be a slave; *servitūtem*

perferre, endure s.; **servīre**, be a slave, in service

servus, serva, slave; *diminutive servulus,*

servula; *adj. servīlis*

mancipium, ownership; slave

verna, home-born slave

ancilla, female slave

vēnālis, slave exposed for sale

Acpn in servitūtem asserere, claim as one's slave

sub corōnā (*or hastā*) **vēndere** (**venīre**), sell (be sold) into slavery

in servitium dūcere, in servitūtem redigere,

abdūcere, abstrahere, trādere, enslave, reduce to slavery

fugitīvus, deserter, fugitive slave

ergastulum, workhouse for slaves

pecūlium, private property of a slave

diārium, daily ration of slaves

freedom

liber, free; **homō liber**, free-man; *noun*

libertās; liberālis, befitting a freeborn man

ingenuus, ingenua, freeborn man, woman

(*servitūte*) **liberāre, in libertātem vindicāre,**

set free; **vindicta**, liberation, setting free (of a slave)

mittere (servum), manūmittere, set free,

enfranchise; *noun manūmissiō*

Acpn in libertātem asserere, declare to be free

libertus, freedman (in relation to previous master)

libertīnus, freedman (social status)

q.v. household, 25.1

33.8 bribery

mercēs, bribe

largīrī, bribe; *noun largitīō*

corrumpere, bribe; *noun corruptiō,*

corruptēla, bribery; **corruptor**, one who bribes

oppūgnāre Acpn pecūniā, try to bribe

redēptiō, bribery

vēnālis, open to bribery

ambitus, illegal canvassing; *Acpn ambitūs or dē ambitū accūsāre*, charge with bribery

34 OFFER, REQUEST, ORDER, GIVE, ALLOW

34.1

offerre, offer

porrigere, offer, hold out

accipere, recipere, accept

grātus, acceptus, agreeable, acceptable

recūsāre, refuse (an offer); *noun recūsātiō*

34.2

rogāre, poscere, postulāre, ask, request, beg,

solicit; frātrem librum rogō or poscō,

librum ā frātre postulō, ask my brother

for a book; *vehementer rogāre*, demand

urgently; *nouns rogātiō, postulātiō, postulātum*

Actg ex, ab or dē Abpn quaerere, ask

petere, ōrāre, beg, request, entreat; *quae*

petō, my request; *ōrātū tuō*, at your request

dēposcere, exigere, demand, require

implōrāre, obsecrāre, exposcere, obtestārī,

besech; *nouns obsecrātiō, obtestātiō*

exōrāre, move by entreaty

supplicāre, pray, supplicate; *missē s.,*

beg humbly; *noun supplicātiō*, public prayer

ad pedēs Gpn or Dpn accidere or sē abicere

or prōicere or prōsternere, cast oneself

before the feet of (as a suppliant); **tendere**

ad Acpn manūs supplicēs, stretch out hands in supplication

precēs P, request; **precārī**, entreat, invoke

īnstāre, demand earnestly, press for

rogitāre, demand eagerly

flāgitāre, afflāgitāre, demand violently,

solicit, clamour for; nouns flāgitātiō,

flāgitātor

impetrāre, obtinēre, obtain; **impetrābilis**, easily obtainable
adnuere, nod assent to, grant
negāre, dēnegāre, recūsāre, abnuere, renuere, refuse (a request); *noun* **recūsātiō**
inexōrābilis, inexorable
retinēre, hold back
gravārī, refuse, raise objection

q.v. persuade, urge, 41.61

34.3 order/forbid/obey

order

iubēre, imperāre, command, order, tell (to do)
iūssum, imperium, command, order; **iūssū**, by order; **iniūssū meō**, without my orders; **imperia administrāre**, issue orders
ēdicere, order, ordain, give orders
Dpn praecipere ut subj., enjoin, bid;
praeceptum, order, instruction; **praecepta dare dē Abtg**, give orders about; **praecepta accipere**, receive o.; p. **observāre**, follow o.
mandāre, enjoin, commission, order; *noun* **mandātum**; **mandāta persequī or exhaurīre**, carry out orders
praescribere, order, prescribe; **praescriptum, praescriptiō**, rule, ordinance
cōgere, compellere, compel
continēre, restrain

forbid

vetāre, forbid
interdicere, forbid (formally)
imperāre or mandāre nē ..., forbid
prohibēre with inf. or Actg and inf., forbid

obey

pārēre, oboedīre, obsequī, obtemperāre, comply with, obey, submit to; *nouns* **obsequium, obtemperātiō**, compliance, obedience
oboediēns, obedient, compliant
dictō audiēns esse D, obey the orders of
praecepta observāre, comply with precepts

34.4 give/thanks

give

dare, dōnāre, give, present, bestow, confer;
suppeditāre, give, furnish, supply in abundance
tribuere, allot, give; **tribūtum**, contribution
dōnum, mūnus, gift; **mūnuscūlum**, little present
praemium, reward; p. **expōnere or prōpōnere**, promise r.; **praemiīs afficere**, reward; p. **cōsequī or merēre**, obtain r.
mactāre (e.g. **honōribus**), reward
trādere, hand over, deliver
committēre, entrust
condōnāre, surrender, deliver up
reddere, restituere, give back, restore

thanks

grātia, gratitude; **grātia**, thanks; **grātiārum āctiō**, expression of thanks; **eī grātiām habeō**, am thankful to him; **māximam grātiām habeō**, am most grateful; **parem grātiām referre**, return like for like; **grātiās (also grātēs) agere**, thank, express thanks; **grātiām referre**, returns thanks, repay, requite, return kindness
grātus, thankful, grateful; g. **ergā or in mē fuit**, **grātum sē mihi praebuit**, he was grateful to me; **grātō animō**, gratefully
ingrātus, ungrateful
sē memorem probāre, show gratitude

34.5 please/thank you

please

sī vīs, or sīs, sōdēs, sī libet, (if you) please
amābō tē or amābō, I shall be much obliged, I beg you

thank you

benīgnē dīcis or facis, thank you
benīgnē ac liberāliter, you are very kind, thank you very much

34.6 allow

concēdere, permittēre, sinere, patī, allow, grant, suffer; *noun* **concessiō, concessus, permissiō**
venia, permission, leave; **veniam petere (dare)**, ask (give) permission
licentia, leave to do as one pleases, licence

facile (or **aequō animō**) **patī**, acquiesce in
cōnfitērī, grant, concede
licet, it is allowed

35 AMUSEMENT, SPORT

35.1

iocus, **iocātiō**, jest, sport; *adjs.* **iocōsus**,
ioculāris; *verb* **iocārī**
nūgae, **ineptiae**, trifles, nonsense; *verb* **nūgārī**
dēsipere, indulge in trifling
scurra, **sanniō**, buffoon, jester; *adj.* **scurrīlis**

q.v. wit, humour, 41.23

35.2

lūdus, game, sport; *verb* **lūdere**; *adj.* **lūdicer**,
connected with sport, done in sport
collūdere, play with; **collūsor**, playmate
lūdī, **lūdicrum**, public games, shows; **lūdōs**
celebrāre, hold games; **lūdōs**
frequentāre, often attend g.
fēriae, festivals, holidays
mūnus, spectacle; *m. dare or ēdere*, provide
a show
māgnificus, sumptuous, splendid; *noun*
māgnificentia

35.3

circus, ring, racecourse; (**lūdī**) **circēnsēs**, races
spatium, racecourse
carcerēs, barrier, starting-point; **calx**, **mēta**,
turning-point, goal
cursus, race
palma, wreath, prize; **palmāris**, worthy of a
prize
aurīga, charioteer
factiō, party of charioteers; *there were four*,
with distinctive colours (**f. albāta**, **prasina**,
russāta, **veneta**)
curriculum, race-ground, sports ground
stadium, **spatium**, racecourse, track (for foot-
racing); **stadium currere**, run a race
cursor, runner (in a race)

35.4

gladiātor, gladiator; *adj.* **gladiātōrius**, e.g.
lūdus; **familia gladiātōria**, band of
gladiators

murmillō, gladiator (with sword, shield and
helmet)

bēstiārius, beast-fighter

certāre, contend; **pūgnis c.**, box

certāmen, contest, match

harēna, arena (in amphitheatre)

pugil, boxer; **pugilātus**, boxing contest

caestus, boxing-glove

luctārī, wrestle; *nouns* **luctātiō**, **luctātor**

palaestra, wrestling school or place; wrestling

alīptēs, master of wrestling school

āthlēta, athlete

gymnasium, gymnasium

35.5 theatre

lūdicra ars, drama

theātrum, theatre; *adj.* **theātrālis**

spectāculum, seats of spectators, amphitheatre

pulpitum, **scaena**, stage; *adj.* **scaenicus**; **lūdī**

scaenicī, theatrical performances; *in*

scaenam prōdīre, appear on the stage

aulaeum, stage curtain

sīparium, smaller curtain, drop-scene

cavea, spectator's seats; theatre

lūdicrum, **spectāculum**, stage-play

fābula, play; **fābula palliāta**, drama of

Greek life; **fābula togāta**, drama of

Roman life; **fābulam dare** *or* **docēre**,

produce a play; **fābulam peragere**, act a

play

cōmoedia, comedy; *adjs.* **cōmoedus**, **cōmicus**;

tragoedia, tragedy; *adj.* **tragicus**, e.g.

āctor, **poēta**

cothurnus, buskin (of tragedian); **soccus**, low
shoe (of comedian)

mīmus, mime

plaudere, applaud; *noun* **plausus**; **plausibilis**,
meriting applause

explōdere, **exsibilāre**, hoot or hiss of the stage

fābula stat, is a success; **f. cadit**, falls flat,
is a failure

histriō, actor, cantor, **artifex scaenicus**,
scaenicus, actor

in scaenā esse, be an actor

grex, **caterva**, company, troop

persōna, mask; character; **persōnam in**
scaenā tractāre, represent a character in a
play, play a part

partēs, character; **prīmae p.**, *or* **prīmae**,
principal characters; **prīmās agere**, play the
chief part; **secundae**, **tertiaē p.**

cōmoedus, comedian; **tragoedus**, tragedian

mīmus, **mīma**, mime (mute actor, actress)

lūdīō, **lūdīus**, pantomimist

saltāre, dance, act in dumb show; *nouns*
saltātiō, **saltātor**, **saltātrix**
tripudium, dance (originally religious); *verb*
tripudiāre
chorēa, **chorus**, (round) dance
canticum, song with dance

35.6

lūdere pilā, play ball
lūdere trochō, trundle a hoop
turbinem versāre, spin a top

36 TOOLS, MATERIALS, etc.

officinā, **fabrica**, workshop, factory
artifex, artisan; **artificium**, trade, handicraft
opifex, workman, mechanic
operārius *or* **homō o.**, workman
faber, smith, carpenter; *f.* **ferrārius**,
blacksmith; *f.* **tignārius**, carpenter; *verb*
fabricārī
vāsculārius, worker in metals
māchinātor, engineer, architect

īnstrūmentum, *usu. collective*, instruments
ferrāmenta, iron tools
māchina, machine
malleus, hammer, mallet
incūs, anvil
follis, pair of bellows
excūdere, forge, hammer into shape
līma, file; *verb* **līmāre**
serra, saw
terebra, gimlet
forceps, pair of pincers, tongs
scālae, ladder; **gradus**, rung

māteria, **tignum**, building materials; timber
trabs, beam; *adj.* **trabālis**
ascia, **secūris**, axe, hatchet
bipennis, double-edged axe
dolāre, hew
clāvus, nail; **trānstra clāvis ferreīs**
cōnfigere, nail beams
cuneus, wedge
scalprum, chisel; **scalpere**, carve

q.v. metals, 23

cōs, whetstone

fodere, dig, excavate
īnfodere, dig in, bury
pāla, spade; **ligō**, hoe; **dolābra**, pickaxe
fossor, digger, ditcher

suere, sew, stitch
īnsuere, sew in
acus, needle; **acū pingere** *or* **pingere**,
embroider
filum, **stāmen**, thread
colus, distaff
fūsus, spindle
texere, weave; **textum**, web, texture
tēla, web; warp (threads running lengthwise in
loom); **trāma**, woof (crosswise)

37 ARMY

37.1

exercitus, army; **exercitum īnstruere**, draw
up a.
◉ **agmen**, army (marching); *a.* **primum**,
vanguard; *a.* **extrēmum** *or* **novissimum** (*or*
novissimī), rearguard; *a.* **claudere**, bring
up the rear; **novissimōs carpere**, harass
the rear; **cōnfertō** *or* **quadrātō** **agmine**, in
close order, with closed ranks
aciēs, army (in battle array)
cōpiae, forces; **māgnae c.**, a large force;
cōpiās īnstruere, draw up *f.*
◉ **armātūrae**, armed troops
rōbur mīlitum, flower of the army, choice
troops
auxilia, auxiliary troops, i.e. allies and light-
armed troops as opposed to legion; *adj.*
auxiliāris, **-ārius**
ālārēs, **ālārī**, auxiliary troops
accēnsī, reserve troops
legiōnārī, heavy-armed troops
mīles statārius, soldier fighting in the ranks
ferentārī, **vēlitēs**, **rōrārī**, light-armed troops
funditor, slinger, light-armed soldier
peditātus, **pedestrēs cōpiae**, infantry; **pedes**,
foot-soldier; *P* **peditēs**, infantry; **pedester**,

on foot, infantry (*adj.*); **pedibus merēre**, serve with the infantry
equitātus, equestrēs cōpiae, cavalry; **eques**, horseman; *collectively*, cavalry; **equester**, cavalry (*adj.*); **equō merēre**, serve with the cavalry; **ex equīs pūgnāre**, fight on horseback
beneficiārius, privileged soldier
calō, soldier's servant
ordinēs, ranks; *ordinēs servāre*, stay in the ranks; *cōnfertīs (solūtīs) ordinibus*, with closed (open) ranks
in orbem cōsistere, orbem facere, to form a circle
cuneum facere, form a wedge
caterva, troop (of barbarians)

37.2

legiō, legion (10 cohorts and 300 cavalry); *adj.*
legiōnārius; legiōnes complēre or supplēre, bring legions up to full strength
Hastātī, in front; **Prīncipēs**, next, **Triārīī**, behind
prīncipia P, van of army, first line of soldiers
antesignānī, chosen soldiers who fought in front and in defence of the standards
cornū, āla, wing of army (*usu.* cavalry); *adjs.*
ālāris, ālārius
cohors, cohort (3 maniples), battalion;
cohortēs facere, levy c.; *dispōnere cohortēs*, arrange c.; *cohortēs explēre*, bring c. up to full strength
manipulus, maniple (2 centuries or companies); *adj.* **manipulāris**
centuria, century, company (of 100, later 60, men); *verb* **centuriāre**, divide into c.; *adv.* **centuriātīm**, by c.'s
turma, troop or squadron of cavalry;
turmālēs, horsemen in a t.; *adv.* **turmātīm**

imperium, command; *summa imperiī*, chief or supreme command; *s. i. Dpn dēferre*, appoint to chief comand; *imperium Dpn prōrogāre*, extend period of command;
noun **prōrogātiō**
exercitum dūcere, command army
praeesse D, be in command of
praeficere D, put in command of
recēnsere, recōgnōscere, review (an army or navy); *noun* **recōgnitiō**
imperātor, commander-in-chief; *adj.*
imperātōrius

dux, general
lēgātī (P), general's staff, officers
comitātus, retinue, suite
lēgātus (or later, praefectus) legiōnis, colonel, general of division
praefectus equitum, commander or colonel of cavalry
tribūnus militāris or militum, military tribune (six to each legion, each in command for two months)
centuriō, captain
prīmīpīlus, senior captain (of Triārīī); *primum pīlum dūcere*, be s. c.

37.3

- **mīles**, soldier; *m. gregārius, manipulāris*, private s.; *m. legiōnārius*, soldier of the line; *adj.* **militāris**; *verb* **militāre**, serve as a soldier
- vetus mīles, veterānus (mīles)**, tried soldier, veteran
- seniōrēs**, Roman citizens between forty-five and sixty, summoned to military service only in an extreme emergency
- stipendium**, pay; *s. merēre or merērī*, go on a campaign; *quīna stipendia merēre*, serve five years; *stipendia ēmerēre*, complete term of service; *adj.* **stipendiārius**, serving for pay
- mercēnnārīū militēs**, mercenaries
- voluntārīū (militēs)**, volunteers
- ēvocātī**, volunteers (who have completed military service)
- **militiae (adv.)**, in military service, on a campaign, in the field; *domī militiaeque*, at home and abroad
- commeātus, vacātiō**, furlough; *dare commeātum Dpn; esse in commeātū; vacātiōnēs omnēs tollere*, stop all leave
- exercitum comparāre, scrībere, cōnscribere**, raise an army
- ad arma conclāmāre**, call to arms
- dēlēctus**, levy; *dēlēctum habēre*, hold a levy, recruit
- conquīsītor**, recruiting officer
- tīrō**, recruit; **cōnscriptī**, recruits
- sacrāmentum**, oath of allegiance, taken on enlisting
- arma ferre posse**, be fit for military service
- militiam perennem facere**, serve for a year
- immūnis militiā**, exempt from military service; **militiae vacātiō**, exemption from m. s.; **militiam dētrectāre**, avoid m. s.

sēditio, mutiny; *sēditionem concitare*,
movēre, facere, cōnflāre, stir up m.;
sēdāre, bring to an end (by gentle means);
comprimere, suppress; *adj.* **sēditiosus**
mittere, **dimittere** (e.g. *legiōnēs*), disband;
ēmeritus, (honourably) discharged
novae cōpiae, **supplēmentum**, reinforcements
subsidium *or* **-ia** (*P*), reserves; s.
submittere, send up r.

37.4

tēlum, weapon (missile); *vīs tēlōrum*,
crēbra tēla, shower of missiles; *intrā*
(extrā) iactum *or* *coniectum tēlī*,
within (out of) range; *tēla iacere*,
conicere, *adigere*, *immittere*,
mittere, hurl, discharge; *tēla rēicere*,
return

*q.v. THE FOLLOWING ENTRY IS MISSING
IN EVAN'S AUDIO VERSION*

missile, missile

arma, arms; a. *tractāre*, wield a.; in
armīs, under a.; *vī et armīs*, by force of
a.; a. *expedire*, hold a. in readiness; a.
sūmere *or* *capere*, take up a.; a. *inferre*,
invade; *ab armīs discēdere*, *arma*
pōnere, lay down a.; a. *abicere*, throw
away a.; *verb* **armāre**

armātus, armed; **armātūra**, equipment;
inermis, unarmed; **expeditus**, lightly armed
(soldier), ready for battle; **impeditus**, in
heavy marching order

sarcina, bundle; (*P*), baggage; *sarcinās*
colligere *or* *cōnferre*, collect b.;

impedimenta (*P*), baggage of an army,
baggage train

vāsa, military equipment, baggage

commeātus (*S or P*), provisions, supplies;
māgna vīs commeātūs, abundant supplies;
hostēs commeātū interclūdere *or*
prohibere, cut off the enemy's supplies

cibāria (*P*), rations, fodder

frūmentum, grain; **frūmentārī**, get food (for
soldiers); **rem frūmentāriam expedire** *or*
comparāre *or* **prōvidere** *or* **dē rē**
frūmentāriā prōvidere, provision

suppetere, be available, in abundance, hold
out (of supplies)

iūmentum, pack animal
pābulum, fodder; *verb* **pābulārī**, forage;

nouns **pābulatiō**, **pābulator**

cassis, helmet (*usu.* metal)

galea, helmet (*usu.* leather)

lōrica, (leather) cuirass

clipeus, (round) shield

parma, (small round) shield

scūtum, (oblong) shield

caetra, small leather shield; *adj.* **caetrātus**

pelta, (light) shield; **peltastae**, troops armed
with pelta

umbō, boss of shield; shield

palūdātus, dressed in **palūdāmentum**,
military cloak

sagum, military cloak; *saga sūmere* *or* *ad*
saga ire, take up arms; in *sagīs esse*, be
under arms; **sagulum**, small military cloak

balteus, girdle, belt

ēnsis, **gladius**, sword; *gladium stringere*,
dīstringere, *ēducere*, draw s.; in
gladium incumbere, fall on s.

vāgīna, sheath, scabbard; *gladium in*
vāginam recondere, sheathe one's sword

mūcrō, **aciēs**, point, edge

pugiō, **sīca**, dagger

hasta, spear; **hastile**, shaft of spear

lancea, lance, spear

pīlum, **verūtum**, javelin

iaculum, dart, javelin

gaesum, heavy javelin of Gauls

iaculātor, dart-thrower

contorquere, hurl

spīculum, iron tip (of spear or arrow)

arcus, bow; *arcum intendere*, draw b.;

sagitta, arrow

sagittārius, archer

pharetra, *poet.*, quiver

funda, sling; **glāns**, sling-stone

funditor, slinger

sīgnum, **vexillum**, standard; **aquila**, standard
(of legion)

sīgnifer, **vexillārius**, **aquilifer**, standard-
bearer

q.v. trumpet, 13.2

37.5 on the march

q.v. agmen, 37.1

sīgna ferre *or* **movēre** *or* **vellere** *or* **convellere**, break up camp, begin a march;
sīgna sequī, march in military order
iter facere, march; **iter intermittere**, stop marching; **extentīs itineribus**, by forced marches; **māgnīs itineribus contendere**, hasten with forced marches; **ex (or in) itinere**, on the march; **itinere continuātō**, marching continuously
prōgredi, **sīgna movēre** *or* **ferre** *or* **prōferre**, advance; **contendere**, **festīnāre**, **mātūrāre**, push on, hurry, hasten
sīgna convertere, face about, march in another direction, change one's route
cōsistere, **sīgna cōstituere**, halt
īnsidiae, ambush; **locus ad īnsidiās aptus**, a suitable ambush; **īnsidiārī D**, lie in ambush for; **mīlitēs in īnsidiīs collocāre**, station soldiers in ambush
opprimere, surprise, catch
interclūdere, cut off

explōrātor, spy, scout
speculātor, scout, reconnoiterer
ēmīssārius, emissary, scout, spy
explōrāre, reconnoitre

37.61 war/peace

war

bellum, war
expeditiō, campaign; **stipendia merēre** *or* **merērī**, go on a campaign
bellicōsus, **pūgnāx**, **ferōx**, warlike; **imbellis**, unwarlike
rebelliō, revolt, rebellion; *adj. plp* **rebellis**; *verb* **rebellāre**, renew war
dēfectiō, revolt; *verb* **dēficere**
hostis, enemy; (*P*), enemy (collectively)
hostīlis, **īnfēstus**, **īnimīcus**, hostile
hosticus, belonging to enemy

peace

pāx, peace
pācāre, make peaceful; **pācātus**, in a state of peace
indūtiāe, truce, armistice; **indūtiās facere**, arrange t.; *i.* **pepigisse**, have arranged t.;

i. **tollere**, terminate t.; *i.* **violāre**, break t.

condiciōnēs, terms; *c.* **ferre**, offer terms of surrender; *c.* **aequae**, fair, favourable t.; *c.* **īnīquae**, harsh t.

obses, hostage; **obsidēs dare**, give h.; *o.* **inter sē dare**, exchange h.; *o.* **accipere**, accept h.; *o.* **hostibus impōnere**, exact h.
socius, ally; **societās**, league, alliance; **societātem cum Abpn coīre**, **cōnflāre**, **īnīre** *or* **statuere**

foedus, treaty; **ex foedere**, according to a t.; *f.* **facere**, **ferīre**, **īcere**, **pangere**, ratify a treaty; *f.* **frangere**, **rumpere**, **violāre**, break a t.

37.62 raid

mīlitēs (legiōnēs, cohortēs, exercitum) ēducere, lead forth, march out, take the field
sīgna prōferre, **sīgna īnferre (in Ac)**, march to the attack; **aggredi**, **adorīrī**, **īnvādere**, attack

arma ultrō īnferre, be the aggressor
incurrere, **incursiōnem**, **incursum**, **excursiōnem facere**, make a raid (on); *via* **excursiōnibus īnfēsta**, road unsafe owing to raids

hostēs dēprehendere, fall upon, surprise enemy

dēfendere, defend; *ab* **hostibus mē d.**

repūgnāre, **resistere D**, resist

sustinēre, check

repellere, **prōpulsāre**, drive back

vāstāre, lay waste; **agrōs v.**, lay waste the country; **vāstītās**, devastation; **vāstātīō**, laying waste

populāre *or* **-ārī**, lay waste, plunder; *nouns* **populātīō**, **populātor**

ferrō īgnīque, with fire and sword

ferre atque agere praedam, plunder (*agere of* *cattle*)

37.63 battle

proelium, battle; **proeliārī**, join battle

pūgna, fight, battle; *verb* **pūgnāre**

manum (or manūs) cōnserere, **manūs** *or* **arma cōnferre**, *or* **pedem cōnferre**, engage in close combat, join battle

cōnfligere armīs, **armīs congregedi**, fight; *noun* **congressus**

● **proelium** *or bellō or ferrō or armīs*
dēcernere, fight a battle
certāre, dīmīcāre, struggle; *nouns certāmen, dīmīcātiō*
comminus, in close (single) combat, hand to hand
ēminus, at at distance suitable for missiles
ad hostem īre, sīgna ferre in hostem, prōpūgnāre, advance to attack
impetus, onset, attack; *impetum facere*, charge
imprōvīsus, unexpected; *adv. imprōvīsō, dē or ex imprōvīsō*
impūgnāre, attack, e.g. Galliam; *noun impūgnātiō*
oppūgnāre, assault
rēicere, force back, repulse
locus, position; *locum capere*, seize p.; in locō perstāre, hold one's ground; locō cēdere *or excēdere*, give g.
hostēs gradū dēmōvēre, make enemy yield ground
praeoccupāre (e.g. collēs), occupy first

37.64 confusion and retreat

tumultus, confusion, disturbance;
tumultuōsus, tumultuārius, disorderly
perturbāre, throw into confusion; **perturbārī**, fall into c.; *noun perturbātiō*
trepidāre, get confused
cūctārī, hesitate
labōrāre, be hard pressed
receptus, retreat; *signum receptuī*, signal for retreat; *receptuī canere*, sound a retreat
sē recipere, sē or pedem or gradum referre, or referrī, retreat, retire
dēcertāre, dēpūgnāre, fight to a finish
anceps, uncertain, indecisive; a. *stetit pūgna*, the issue was uncertain
aequō Mārte or aequīs condiciōnibus pūgnāre, or aequō proeliō discēdere, fight indecisively, a drawn battle

37.65 pursuit, flight, desertion

īnsistere, sequī, īnsequī, cōnsectārī, persecuī, prōsequī, īnstāre *Dpn*, press upon, pursue
fugāre, pellere, in fugam dare or conicere or impellere or vertere or convertere, put to flight, rout
fuga, flight; *sē fugae dare or mandāre, sē in fugam dare or cōnferre*, fugam capere *or petere, terga vertere or*

convertere or dare, sē in fugam concitāre, take to flight; *fugam sistere*, stay, arrest flight

fugere, effugere, prōfugere, flee
refugere, flee back, escape
ēvādere, escape
trānsīre, dēsciscere ab Abpn ad Acpn, perfugere, rarely trānsfugere, ab sīgnīs discēdere, sīgna relinquere or dēserere, desert
perfuga, trānsfuga, dēsertor, deserter

37.66 disaster, slaughter

clādēs, defeat, disaster
caedēs, strāgēs, carnage, slaughter
interneciō, massacre, carnage
concidere, cut to pieces
trucidāre, contrucidāre, butcher; *noun trucidātiō*
dēlēre, wipe out
 ● **salvus, incolumis, intāctus**, safe, unharmed, uninjured
exsanguis, exhausted, worn out
vulnerāre, wound; **vulnera excipere**, get wounded
saucius, wounded; *verb sauciāre*, wound, disable
vulneribus cōnfectus, exhausted by wounds
iacent militum animī, the soldiers' spirits are broken
(exercitus) attrītus, exhausted

37.67 victory/surrender

victory
victōria, victory; v. *certa or haud dubia*, complete v.; **vincere, victōriam adipīscī, expedīre, parere, reportāre, victōriā potīrī, rem obtinēre**, gain a victory; *victōriam temperāre*, use v. with moderation
dēvincere, conquer completely
victor, victrīx, conqueror; *victor (oftener superior) discēdere*, come off victorious
vincere, domāre, subdue, conquer; **domitor**, conqueror
indomitus, inexpūgnābilis, invictus, unconquerable
proeliō superior esse, be victorious (in battle)
dētrīmentum afferre or īnferre, inflict defeat; d. *accipere or capere*, be defeated
superāre, overcome
prōfligāre, overwhelm, crush
subigere, in potestātem redigere, subdue

hostem armīs exuere, disarm enemy

surrender

dēditō, trāditiō, surrender, capitulation; in dēditōnem accipere, receive the surrender of

trādere (e.g. urbem), surrender; **manūs dare** or **dēdere, sē dēdere, arma trādere, in dēditōnem venīre, in fidem atque potestātem sē permittere**, surrender (*intrans.*)

victōris iram dēprecārī, ask for quarter; **salūtem petere**, beg for mercy

mortem dēprecārī, beg for life; *Acpn* **(incolumem) cōservāre**, grant a man his life

captus, captive, prisoner

potestātī alterius sē submittere, become subject to; **subiectus**, subject

in officiō continēre *Ac*, keep in submission; **in officiō permanēre**, remain in submission

capere, captivum facere, take prisoner

sub iugum mittere, send under the yoke

sub corōnā (or **hastā**) **vēndere**, sell into slavery

37.7 camp

oppidum, arx, castellum, castrum, fort,

stronghold; *castrum nātūrā locī*

mūnitum, fort with strong natural position;

adjs. **castrēnsis, castellānus**

● **castra** (*P*), camp; *c.* **capere**, *locum ad c.* (or *castrīs*) **idōneum dēligere**, choose a site for a camp; *c.* **facere, pōnere** or **mūnīre**, pitch *c.*, encamp; *c.* **movēre**, break up or shift *c.*; **militēs castrīs tenēre**, keep the soldiers in camp

statīva or **castra statīva**, stationary camp

cōnsidere, encamp, take up a position

sīgna convellere, strike camp

hīberna or **castra hīberna**, winter quarters;

hībernācula, winter tents

aestīva, summer camp

praesidium, garrison

tabernāculum, tent

sub pellibus, under tents, in camp

praetōrium, general's tent

prīncipia *P*, open space in camp, general's quarters

praefectus castrōrum (or **castrīs**), quartermaster

vigilia, watch, guard, sentinel; *vigiliās dispōnere*, post sentinels; *verb* **vigilāre**; **vigilantia**, watchfulness

esse in speculis, be on the look-out

cūstōdia (*usu. in P*), **excubiae**, guard, sentry;

excubāre, keep watch

mūnitiō, fortification; *mūnitiōnēs facere*,

erect; *locum mūnitiōnibus firmāre*,

fortify; *m.* **prōruere**, demolish

mūnīmentum (*usu. P*), fortifications,

entrenchments, (fortified) lines

opera facere, raise siegeworks

mūnīre, commūnīre, ēmūnīre, fortify,

entrench; **permūnīre**, fortify completely

exstruere, heap up, construct; *noun* **extrūctiō**

moenia (*P*), ramparts; *moenia* or *mūrum*

complēre, man the walls; *cūstōdiās in*

mūrō dispōnere, station sentinels on the wall

● **mūrōs** (**cunīculō**) **subruere** or **suffodere** or **cunīculum facere**, undermine walls

vāllum, rampart, palisade; *castra vāllō*

cīncta, camp surrounded by a rampart;

vāllum dūcere or *exstruere*, raise a r.; *v.*

scindere, demolish a r.; **vāllāre**, entrench

vallus, stake; palisade

cippī, palisade

agger, mound, earthwork; *aggerem iacere, exstruere, instruere*

fossa, trench; *fossam dūcere*, make a trench

dispōnere, arrange, station

statiō, outpost, post, picket; in *statiōne*, on

guard; *statiōnem agere*, keep guard;

cōpiās in statiōnēs collocāre or

pōnere, assign troops to their posts;

statiōnēs pōnere or *dispōnere*, set

pickets; in *statiōnem succēdere*, relieve

incautus, imprōvidus, imprūdēns, heedless, not foreseeing, off one's guard

37.8 siege

obsidēre, circumsedēre, besiege, blockade, invest

obsidiō, obsessiō, circumsessiō, siege,

blockade; *abscēdere* or *absistere*, or

obsidiōnem relinquere, raise a siege;

obsidiōne liberāre, raise a siege (of the

relieving army); **corōna obsidiālis**, awarded for relieving town from siege

māchina, military engine

turris, tower; *turrem excitāre*, erect t.;

tormentum, ballista, catapulta, siege

catapult, engine for hurling missiles;

falārica, missile thrown by catapult; **ariēs**, battering ram
testūdō, roof of shields; **vīnea, mūsculus**, mantlet; **vīneās agere**, advance m.;
pluteus, shed to protect besiegers; **scālās pōnere** *or* **admovēre**, apply scaling-ladders;
scālīs moenia temptāre, attack walls with scaling-ladders
falcēs mūrālēs, hooks for pulling down walls
famēs, starvation; **famē domāre**, reduce by starvation; **fame cōnsūmī** *or* **ēnecārī**, die of starvation
sitis, thirst
pestis, pestilentia, plague
ēruptiō, excursiō, excursus, sally, sortie; **ēruptiōnem facere, excurrere, ē castrīs ērumpere**, sally forth from camp, make a sortie

oppūgnāre, assault; *noun* **oppūgnātiō**;
oppūgnātiōnem dimittere, abandon a.
expūgnāre, vī capere, take by storm; *noun* **expūgnātiō**; *adj.* **expūgnābilis**
oppidum ēvertere, funditus dēlēre, raze a town to the ground; *o.* **diripere**, sack t.
portās obstruere, refringere, barricade, break open the gates

37.9 spoils, etc.

spoliāre, pillage, sack; **spolia**, spoils; *opīma spolia*, spoils of honour (taken on field of battle by victorious from vanquished general); **spoliātiō**, robbing, plundering
diripere, pillage, sack
compilāre, expilāre, plunder, pillage
praeda, poet. exuviae, spoil, booty; **praedārī**, make booty
praemium, booty, reward
manubiae, money obtained from sale of booty
mercēs, recompense
decus, glory; **decorāre**, honour
triumphus, triumph; *adj.* **triumphālis**; *verb* **triumphāre**; *triumphum dēportāre*;
triumphum Trāiānō dēcernere, decree a t. to T.
ovāre, celebrate an **ovātiō** (lesser triumph)
tropaeum, monument of victory

38 CHARACTER

38.1

nātūra, natural disposition, character; *nātūrae bonitās*, good natural gifts
animus, character
indolēs, disposition, temperament (*usu. moral*); *bonā indole praeditus*, highly gifted
affectiō, disposition
praeditus *Abtg*, endowed or gifted with, possessed of
ā nātūrā subōrnātus, endowed by nature

mōrēs *P*, character (mode of life); **homō bene (male) mōrātus**, of good (bad) character; **mōrālis**, moral
ingenium, character (*usu* intellectual); *i.* *tortuōsum*, not frank
proprius, personal, characteristic; **propriūm, proprietās**, characteristic
singulāria, idiosyncrasies

animī māgnitūdō, greatness of soul
rēctus, honourable, upright; **rēctum**, uprightness, rectitude
vir sānctus, blameless, pious man; **sānctitās**, piety, honour
decet, it is becoming, proper; **decēns**, seemly; *noun* **decentia**
virtūs, manliness, virtue; *virtūte praeditus*, virtuous; *virtūtem colere, sequī*, practise goodness; *vir expertāe virtūtis*, of tried worth
modestus, virtuous, moral

exīstimātiō, good name, reputation, credit
fāma, (good, *rarely* bad) reputation; *adj.* **fāmōsus**
glōria, fame, renown; *adj.* **glōriōsus**
splendor, honour, dignity; **splendidus**, noble, illustrious
inclutus, famous, renowned
bene audīre, be well spoken of

• **animī prāvitās**, depravity, vice
vitium, defect, fault, blemish; *vitia pōnere*, give up faults; *vitia extirpāre*, root out, eradicate faults
dēdecet, it is not seemly or proper; *dēdecus*, disgrace
prāvus, corruptus, depraved, vicious; *noun corruptiō*
vitiōsus, wicked, vicious

q.v. 47.2

infāmia, ignōminia, opprobrium, disgrace, dishonour; *infāmiā flagrāre*, be sunk in dishonour; **infāmis**, disreputable; **infāmāre**, dishonour
flāgitium, dēdecus, disgrace, dishonour, shame
probrum, disgrace; disgraceful act
foedus, dishonourable; **foedāre**, disgrace, dishonour
male audīre, stand in bad repute

38.2

bonus, good; *comp. melior, superl. optimus*
liberālis, ingenuus, generōsus, honourable, gentlemanly, noble-minded; *nouns liberālītās; ingenuitās*
urbānus, polite, refined; **urbānitās**, courtesy, refinement
ēlegāns, choice, tasteful; **ēlegantia**, good taste, refinement
gravis, venerable, eminent; **gravitās**, dignity, seriousness
māiestās, dignity, grandeur
māgnanimus, high-souled; *nouns māgnanimitās, māgnitūdō animī*
māgnificus, noble, distinguished; *noun māgnificentia*
ēgregius, distinguished, eminent, honourable
eximius, distinguished, exceptional
illūstris, distinguished, brilliant
nōbilis, distinguished, superior; *noun nōbilitās*
celsus, noble
ēminēre, excellere, flōrēre, praecellere, be conspicuous, eminent; *vir animō et virtūte praecellēns*, a man of excellent character
hērōs, illustrious man
probus, honest, upright; *noun probitās*
spectātus, respected, worthy

honestus, honourable, virtuous, respected; *noun honestās*
apertus, simplex, frank, honest; *noun simplicitās*
praestāns, sublīmis, superior, preeminent, distinguished
summī virī, virī praestantissimī or singulārēs, great men

malus, bad; *comp. pēior, superl. pessimus; also dēterior, dēterrimus*
illiberālis, ignoble, ungenerous, mean; *noun illiberālītās*
humilī abiectōque animō, mean-spirited
sordidus, low-born, mean, vile
dēgener, degenerate, base; *verb dēgenerāre*
animus pusillus or angustus or minūtus, petty spirit
ūnus ē (or dē) multīs, an ordinary man
mediocris, ordinary, undistinguished
ignōbilis, ignoble
improbus, unprincipled
inhonestus, dishonourable
vulgus, the common herd
sordēs, faex, the dregs, rabble
homō nihilī, homō luteus, a worthless man

38.3 strong/weak

strong, firm
modestia, (animī) moderātiō, self-control; *adj. modestus*
temperātus, moderate, restrained; **temperantia**, moderation, self-restraint
continentia, moderation
rōbur animī, strength of mind; *adj. rōbustus*, e.g. *animus*; *verb corrōborāre*, strengthen, steel
constāns, stabilis, firmus, firm, steadfast; *nouns cōstantia, stabilitās, firmitās*, resolution, determination, stability, endurance
 • **obstinātus, pervicāx**, determined, steadfast (*also obstinate*); *nouns obstinātiō, pervicācia; obstināre*, be firmly resolved; *obstinātō animō*, with mind made up; *obstinātiō sententiae*, adherence to one's principles
affirmātus, obstinate
tenāx, steadfast, persistent
pertināx, firm, unyielding (*also obstinate*); *noun pertinācia*

weak, fickle

impotēns, immoderātus, incontinēns,
intemperāns, unrestrained, having no self-control
intemperantia, intemperiēs, lack of restraint, imtemperate conduct
petulāns, capricious; *noun* **petulantia**
dēbilis, weak (of mind); *noun* **dēbilitās**
ēnervātus, unnerved, weakly
veternus, sloth, enervation
mōbilis, levis, incōnstāns, subitus, varius,
ventōsus, fickle, inconstant, unreliable;
nouns **mōbilitās, levitās animī,**
incōnstantia, fickleness, want of principle
īnfīrmus, weak (in character); *īnfīrmo animō esse,* be inconstant

q.v. weakness, 38.5

38.4 faithful/faithless

faithful

fidēs, faith, trust, loyalty; *fidem praestāre,* keep one's word; *fidem fallere,* break faith; *fidem tibi habeo,* put faith in you, place reliance on you; *adjs.* **fidēlis, fidus,** faithful, trustworthy; *noun* **fidēlitās**
fidere *Dpn,* trust
spectāre in *Acpn,* rely on; **spectātus,** tried, tested
frētus *Ab,* relying on
pius, loyal, devoted, dutiful; *noun* **pietās**

faithless

īnfidēlis, īnfidus, perfidus, perfidiōsus, faithless, treacherous, disloyal; *nouns* **īnfidēlitās, perfidia**
diffidere *Dpn,* distrust; *noun* **diffidentia**
Acpn **ā fidē abdūcere,** render disloyal

38.5 strength/weakness

strength, courage

ferōx, bold, martial, high-spirited; **ferōciter,** with spirit; **ferōcia, ferōcitās,** spirit, vigour, bravery
audēre, dare; **audāx,** bold, resolute; *also* rash; *noun* **audācia**
animus, high courage, spirit; *animōs tollere* *Dpn,* raise the spirits of; **animōsus,** spirited
spiritus, courage; *spiritūs remittere,* lose c.
animus praesēns, resolute spirit
fidūciae plēnus, courageous

virtūtem praestāre, show courage
sē cōfirmāre, take courage
fidēs, confident, bold
fortis, strong, brave, sturdy; **fortitūdō,** courage, bravery
virtūs, courage (*also* virtue); *virtūtem praestāre,* show c.
intrepidus, *plp,* undaunted

weakness, cowardice

timidus, timid, cowardly; *noun* **timiditās**
īgnāvus, cowardly; **īgnāvia,** cowardice
imbēcillus, weak, feeble, *noun* **imbēcillitās**
fragilis, frail; *noun* **fragilitās**
mollis, unmanly, weak; **mollitia, mollitiēs,** weakness, irresolution; *mollitiā fluere,* be relaxed, slack
effeminātus, womanish, effeminate
animō dēficere or succumbere, be disheartened, lose heart

38.6 modesty/pride

modesty

pudor, modesty
pudīcus, modest, chaste; *noun* **pudīcitia**
modestus, submissus, modest, unassuming; *noun* **modestia**
verēcundus, modest, bashful; **verēcundia,** shyness, reverence

pride, insolence, boastfulness

suī fidūcia, self-confidence
superbus, arrogāns, īnsolēns, fastīdiōsus, **celsus,** proud, haughty, disdainful; *nouns* **superbia, arrogantia, īnsolentia, fastīdium, fastus**
supercilium, arrogance
audācia, impudence, insolence, audacity
petulāns, impudent; *noun* **petulantia**
īnsolenter sē efferre, swell with insolence
procāx, insolent, impertinent; *noun* **procācitas**
protervus, impudent, impertinent; *noun* **protervitās**
contumāx, obstinate, insolent; *noun* **contumācia**
vānus, māgnificus, boastful; *noun* **vānitās, māgnificentia**
glōria, glōriātiō, boasting; **glōriārī,** boast, be proud of
glōriōsus, vainglorious
sē iactāre dē *Ab,* **ostentāre** *Ac,* **ēbullire** *Ac,* boast of; *nouns* **iactātiō, ostentātiō**
salacō, braggart

38.7 prudence/rashness

prudence, caution, forethought

cōnsilium, prudence; *cōnsiliō Gpn nītī*, rely on one's p.

prūdēns, discreet, prudent; **prūdentia**, prudence

sēnsus commūnis, discretion, tact

sānus, sane, rational, discreet; **sānitās**, sanity, good sense; *ad sānitātem redūcere Acpn*, bring to reason; *ad sānitātem revertī or redire or sē convertere*, return to one's senses

attentus, cūriōsus, diligēns, careful, attentive, cautious; *noun diligētia*

cautus, prōvidēns, prōvidus, cautious; *nouns cautiō, prōvidentia, prōvisiō*

providēre Actg animō, foresee

cōnsiderātus, circumspect, cautious

sōbrius, moderate, sensible

cōnsultum, (something) well considered

rashness, indignation

vehemēns, violentus, impetuous, ardent; *noun violentia*

praeceps, hasty, rash

temerārius, incōnsiderātus, thoughtless, rash; *noun temeritās; temere*, rashly, at random

effrēnātiō, unbridled impetuosity

neglegēns, careless, inattentive, reckless

incautus, imprōvidus, imprūdēns, heedless, improvident, off one's guard; *noun imprudentia*

incōnsultus, unadvised, indiscreet

38.8 mild/severe

pleasant, mild

iūcundus, suāvis, pleasant, agreeable, charming; *nouns iūcunditās, suāvitās*

hilaris, cheerful; *noun hilaritās*

remissus, cheerful, genial

bonitās, goodness, kindness, friendliness, benevolence

grātus, pleasing, agreeable

placidus, gentle, calm

grātiōsus, popular, beloved, obliging, agreeable

commodus, prōlixus, agreeable, obliging, friendly

aequus, kind

clēmēns, lēnis, mānsuētus, gentle, lenient; *nouns clēmētia, lēnitās, mānsuētūdō*

mītis, gentle, mild

hūmānus, kind, courteous; *noun hūmānitās*

almus, adj. kindly

beneficus, obliging; **beneficium**, kind deed; *beneficiō afficere*, treat well;

beneficentia, beneficence

propitius, favourable, gracious

officium, favour, courtesy; *mūtātiō*

officiōrum, mutual services

hōc (Ac) tibi grātificor, do you this favour

benīgnus, friendly; *noun benīgnitās*

cōmis, affable, genial, courteous; *noun*

cōmitās

festivus, jovial, agreeable

facilis, benevolus, good-natured, kind; *nouns*

facilitās, benevolentia

severe, harsh

sevērus, stern, austere; *noun sevēritās*

dērēctus, severe

asper, harsh, violent, cruel; *noun asperitās*

truculentus, trux, grim, harsh

atrōx, grim, truculent, severe; *noun atrōcitās*

importūnus, harsh, churlish; *noun*

importūnitās

acerbus, bitter, harsh

amārus, caustic, bitter

dūrus, hard, merciless, unfeeling; *noun*

dūritia

ferreus, hard-hearted, cruel

trīstis, morose, stern; *noun trīstitia*

difficilis, ill-tempered, surly; *noun difficultās*

mōrōsus, peevish, fretful; *noun mōrōsitās*

inhūmānus, savage, churlish, discourteous;

noun inhūmānitās

saevus, ferōx, fierce, violent, savage; *nouns*

saevitia, ferōcia, ferōcitās

crūdēlis, cruel, hard-hearted; **crūdēlitās**,

crūdēlitātem exercēre, display c.

38.9 generous/stingy

generous, liberal

largus, bountiful, liberal; **largīrī**, give freely, lavish; *nouns largītiō, largitās*

benīgnus, obliging, liberal; *noun benīgnitās*

liberālis, mūnificus, generous, liberal; *nouns*

liberālitās, mūnificentia

plēnā manū, generously

sūmptuōsus, prōdigus, extravagant, wasteful;

homō sūmptuōsus, spendthrift

stingy, miserly

parcus, thrifty, niggardly; *noun parsimōnia*

malīgnus, tenāx, stingy, closefisted

avārus, miserly, covetous; *noun avāritia*

studium lucrī or habendī, greed

39 WORK, DUTY

39.1 work, effort

labor, work; *sē labōre dūrāre*, strengthen oneself by hard work; *nōn parcere labōrī*, spare no pains; *verbs labōrāre, ēlaborāre Actg or Abtg*

lūcubrātiō, working by night, work done by night

opus, labour, effort; *o. efficere or perficere*, perform work; *diminutive opusculum*

cōnātus, effort, exertion; *cōnātūs Gpn infringere*, counteract one's e.

opera, work, exertion; *operam dare D*, bestow care on, take pains over; *operae pretium est*, it is worth while; *oleum et operam perdere*, lose one's time and trouble

mōlēs, mōlīmen, mōlimentum, exertion

contentiō, intentiō, effort, exertion, straining

nīti, adnīti, cōnīti, ēnīti, mōlīri, contendere, exert oneself, strive; *summā or māximā ope ēnīti*, make supreme efforts

expetere, strive for

sūdāre, work hard; *noun sūdor*

accūrāre, do with care

omnia summa facere, do one's utmost

prō virīli parte, summā vī, to the best of one's ability, with all one's might

operam nāvāre Dtg, work hard at, carry out energetically; *adj. nāvus*, busy, active

negōtium, business, trouble

occupātus, busy; **occupātiō**, occupation

coeptum, inceptum, undertaking


39.2 leisure

ōtium, leisure, ease, idleness; **ōtiōsus**, at leisure, lazy; *ōtiōsus sum*, enjoy repose; **ōtiārī**, take one's leisure, be at l.

sē ab omnī occupātiōne expedire, put all work aside

cessāre, be at leisure, have nothing to do; *nouns cessātiō*, idling; **cessātor**, idler

tempus vacuum, leisure; **vacuus**, disengaged; *animō vacuō esse*, be disengaged; **vacāre**, be at leisure

 **subsīcīva tempora**, leisure hours

fēriātus, disengaged, idle

nihil agere, be idle

q.v. amusement, sport, 35

q.v. rest, 39.9

39.3 vain effort

nihil agere, lose one's labour, effect nothing

nihil prōdesse, be useless

rē infectā, without result

frūstrā, in vain, without effect

nēquīquam, in vain, to no purpose

irritus, vain, useless, ineffectual

39.1 work, effort (continued)

cōficere, perficere, peragere, absolvere, complete, carry through

fungī Ab, perform (as a duty), discharge;

fūctiō, execution

efficere, contrive, accomplish; *efficere ut subj.*, succeed in (a design); **effectiō**,

effectus, carrying out, performance; **efficāx**, effective

Actg retractāre, take up again

rem prosperē gerere, win a success; **prosperē evenire**, turn out well. *See also 32.2*

dispōnere, arrange; *noun dispositiō*

39.4 duty

mūnus, officium, pēnsium, duty; **officiōsus**, obliging, ready to serve

pius, dutiful (e.g. son, parent); *noun pietās*

prōvincia, official duty, charge

iūdicis (etc.) est Inf., it is the duty of a judge (etc.) to ...

oportet, it is proper, (I) ought, it is (my) duty

velle, be willing

sponte meā, of my own accord

libenter, willingly

meā voluntāte, voluntarily, of my own free will

cōgere, compellere, subigere, compel

q.v. urge, 41.6

vī, per vim, forcibly

nōlle, be unwilling

invītus, unwilling

gravātē, gravātīm, unwillingly

39.5 easy

facilis, prōclivis, easy; *noun* **facilitās**
facile, easily, with ease
nūllō negōtiō, without difficulty, without trouble

39.6 difficult

difficilis, difficult, hard; *noun* **difficultās**
aegrē, vix, difficulter, with difficulty
arduus, very difficult
labōriōsus, operōsus, toilsome
rēs est multae operae, it is a hard piece of work
onus, burden
spissum opus, a lengthy, laborious, troublesome piece of work
contortīō, intricacy, complication

39.7 industrious, eager; care

industrius, labōriōsus, operōsus, industrious; *noun* **industria**
sēdulus, diligēns, painstaking; *nouns* **sēdultās, diligentia**, attentiveness
attentus, intentus, attentive, industrious
assiduus, assiduous
ācer, alacer, impiger, ērēctus, strēnuus, vegetus, eager, keen, active, energetic; *nouns* **ācrimōnia, energy; alacritās**, enthusiasm; **impigritās**, energy, diligence
prōmptus, ready, willing
studium, zeal; **studiōsus**, keen, eager
studiīs dēditus, an eager student
nihil praetermittere quīn subj., leave nothing undone
cūra, care
cūrāre, prōcūrāre, look after, attend to
prōspicere, prōvidēre, provide for
invigilāre, be concerned for
animum attendere ad Ac, respicere, pay attention to, have regard for; *noun* **respectus**
Gpn **ratiōnibus** (interests) **cōsulere or prōspicere or prōvidēre**, consult, provide for
ratiōnem habēre Gtg, have regard for, see to, be concerned about

39.8 idle; neglect

ignāvus, piger, sēgnis, sōcors, idle, lazy, sluggish, dilatory; *nouns* **ignāvia, pigritia, sēgnitia, sēgnitās, sōcordia**

nebulō, idle rascal
remissus, iners, slack, indolent; *paulō remissius*, with some want of energy
refrigerārī, refrigēscere, relanguēscere, grow languid
languidus, sluggish, listless, inactive
lentus, easy-going, phlegmatic; *noun* **lentitūdō**
dēsidia, inertia, inactivity; *adj.* **dēsidiōsus**
liquēscere, grow slack
incūria, carelessness, neglect
neglegere, dērelinquere Actg, dēesse Dtg, neglect; *nouns* **neglegentia, dērelictio**
indormire Dtg, be careless over
id facere intermisit, he has neglected to do it
omittere, leave undone (designedly)
praetermittere, leave undone (undesignedly); *praetermissa repeterere*, make good what had been left undone
posthabēre, postpōnere, neglect, sacrifice

39.9 weariness, rest

lassitūdō, weariness, fatigue
dēfetiscī, grow weary, be exhausted
fessus, dēfessus, plp lassus, weary, tired
fatigātus, dēfatigātus, cōfectus (labōre), exhausted; *nouns* **fatigatiō, dēfatigatiō**
languēre, be faint, wearied; **languēscere**, grow faint
quiēscere, rest, leave off; *noun* **quiēs**; *sē quiētī dare or trādere, quiētem capere*, take rest; *adj.* **quiētus**, at rest
acquiēscere, conquiēscere, repose, find rest
requiēs, rest, recreation; *verb* **requiēscere**
reficere, restore, refresh; *sē r.*, rest
tranquillitās, peacefulness

40 LEARNING, KNOWLEDGE

40.11 wisdom, knowledge

scientia, knowledge; **scīre**, know
artis praecepta, theory
cōgnitiō, knowledge, acquaintance (with things)
omnis doctrīna, every branch of learning
disciplīna, knowledge, science, whatever is taught
sapientia, wisdom, discernment, intelligence, philosophy; *doctōrēs sapientiae*, philosophers; *adj.* **sapiēns**
sapere, be wise
resipiēscere, recover sense

omnēs ineptiās excutere, put away childish things
ēruditiō, learning, knowledge
studium, study; *studiis obsequi or sē imbuere*, devote oneself to s.; *in aliquod s. incumbere*, devote oneself to some s.
litterae, scholarship, learning; *litterarum tractātiō*, occupation with l.; *sē litteris (Ab) or in litterās abdere or sē litteris involvere*, bury oneself in l.; *tinctus litteris*, steeped in l., a thorough scholar
philosophia, philosophy; **philosophus**, **sapiēns**, philosopher; **philosophiam profitērī**, **philosophārī**, be a philosopher by profession; *philosophiae vacāre*, devote oneself to p.
secta, **haeresis**, philosophical school
sophistēs, sophist
prudentia, (practical) prudence, good sense; *adj. prūdēns*
sēnsus commūnis, common sense
vir māgnī cōsiliū or iūdiō firmō praeditus, man of sound judgment
peritiā, **ūsus**, experience, practical knowledge
peritus, **imbūtus ūsū**, experienced

scītus, *usu. poet. of persons*, shrewd, wise, skilful
cūriōsus, desirous of knowing, inquisitive; *noun cūriōsitās*
astūtus, **argūtus**, shrewd; *noun argūtiae*, wit, subtlety, shrewdness
versūtus, adroit, ingenious
callidus, **sollers**, clever, expert; **sollertia**, shrewdness, ingenuity, dexterity
subtilis, subtle; *noun subtilitās*
perspicāx, acute, penetrating


q.v. caution, forethought, 38.7

doctus, learned, versed, experienced
studiōsus, studious, learned
ērudītus, learned, well-informed, experienced
philologus, learned, scholarly; *as noun*, scholar, savant; **philologia**, love of learning
speculātor, inquirer, investigator
gnārus, **sciēns**, skilful, expert
acūtus, **sagāx**, shrewd, sagacious; *nouns acūmen, sagācitās*

40.12 folly, ignorance

īnscientia, ignorance, inexperience
īnscītia, stupidity, incompetence
nescīre litterās, be without a liberal education
barbarus, ignorant; *nouns barbaria, barbariēs*
imperītus, inexperienced, ignorant
in philosophiā inermis, not versed in p.
idiōta, ignorant person, layman
incallidus, unintelligent
hebes, **stupidus**, **stultus**, **fatuus**, **stolidus**, **īnscītus**, **tardus**, **bārdus**, dull, stupid; *nouns stupor, stultitia, fatuitās, īnscītia, tarditās*
dēsipere, be foolish
bārō, fool
īnsipiēns, unwise, foolish; *noun īnsipientia*
īnsānus, foolish; **īnsānia**, folly
absurdus, **ineptus**, silly, absurd, senseless, irrational; **ineptiae**, nonsense, trifling
sōcors, silly, thoughtless; *noun sōcordia*
īnsulsus, insipid, silly, absurd; *noun īnsulsitās*
īnfacētus, **frīgidus**, **plumbeus**, dull, stupid

40.13 sly, cunning, crafty

vafer, crafty, artful, subtle
astūtus, **astūtiae**, *usu. in bad sense*
argūtus, **argūtiae**, *usu. in bad sense*
sollers, *not in bad sense; but sollertia sometimes in bad sense*
callidus, *also in bad sense; noun calliditās, usu. in bad sense*
 **veterātor**, crafty old fellow

q.v. rashness, indiscretion, 38.8

q.v. fraud, 47.4

40.14 investigate

indāgāre, **invēstīgāre**, track, investigate; *nouns indāgātiō, invēstīgātiō*
quaerere, inquire, investigate; *noun quaestiō*
inquīrere, investigate, examine
pertemptāre, inquire into
pertractāre, investigate, study
recōgnōscere, investigate, inspect
cūriōsus ad invēstīgandum, an eager investigator

40.21 school; teacher

disciplīna, **doctrīna**, teaching, training

ēducāre, ēducere, educate; *homō liberāliter ēducātus*, a well-educated man
lūdus, schola, gymnasium, school
audītōrium, lecture room
magister, master
praeceptor, teacher
professor, public teacher, professor
grammaticus, teacher of language and literature, scholar
sella, teacher's chair
īnstituere, īnstruere, īnfōrmāre, docēre, praecipere (e.g. *dē arte dicendī*), **ērudīre, artibus īficere (puerum)**, teach, instruct; *nouns* **īnstitūtīō, ērudītīō**
ēdocēre, teach thoroughly
(iuvenēs) ad studium incitāre, urge to work
praeceptum, nōrma, rule, precept
fōrmula, rule, method
rēgula, rule, model, pattern
ratiō, system, doctrine, tenet; *ratiōne et viā*, systematically
inventa, doctrines, opinions
initia *P*, first principles
explicāre, set forth, explain; *rēs involūtās e.*, e. what is complicated; *nouns* **explicātīō, explicātor**; *adj.* **inexplicābilis**
interpretārī, explain; *noun* **interpretātīō**
explānāre, explain; *nouns* **explānātīō, explānātor**
elementa *P*, rudiments

40.22 pupil

discipulus, -a, alumnus, -a, pupil
discere, learn; **ēdiscere**, learn by heart, learn thoroughly; **condiscere**, learn carefully
tīrō, beginner
rudis, unskilled, inexperienced
nōscere, learn; **pernōscere**, come to know well
cōgnōscere, learn, get to know, investigate, study
studēre *D*, learn, apply oneself to
prōcēdere, make progress, e.g. in *philosophiā*; *noun* **prōcessus**

q.v. THE FOLLOWING ENTRY IS MISSING IN EVAN'S AUDIO VERSION

in *Abtg aliquid (multum) prōficere*, make some (much) progress

prōgressūs facere in studiīs, get on with one's studies

paulum prōgressus, having made some headway
commentārī, meditārī, study
ingenium, ability; *i.* **subigere**, train, school the mind; *ingeniō valēre*, be talented; *prīnceps ingeniī*, of unusual ability
docilis, easily taught; *noun* **docilitās**;
indocilis, learning with difficulty
ferula, rod

q.v. *industrious, idle, 39.7, 39.8*

40.31 culture

cultūra, culture
cultus, civilisation, refinement; *animī c.*, intellectual culture, mental discipline
sapor, taste, refinement
polītus, refined, cultivated
ingenium excolere, mānsuēfacere, subigere, cultivate, train, school the mind
cultus (animus), polished, refined
litterae Latīnae, Roman literature; *litterīs studēre*, study literature
litterātus, accomplished, scholarly
vir doctus, scholar
hūmānus, well-informed, learned; **hūmānitās**, liberal education, refinement

q.v. *wise, learned, 40.11*

40.32 lack of culture

rudis, dūrus, unpolished, uncultivated
horridus, uncouth, unpolished
agrestis, boorish, uncultivated
crassus, dull, uncultivated
homō vāstus, a rough, unpolished fellow
impolītus, unrefined, inelegant
homō incultus or sine sapōre, unpolished, unrefined man
omnis ērudītīōnis expers, illiterate
illitterātus, uneducated, illiterate
indoctus, inērudītus, ignorant, uninstructed
omnium rērum īnsciūs, completely ignorant
iners, unskilled; *noun* **inertia**

q.v. *foolish, ignorant, 40.12*

40.4 activities of the mind

40.41 thought

mēns, mind; *mihi in mentem venit or* occurrit, it occurs to me; *mentem acuere*, sharpen the intellect; *mentī imprimere or mandāre*, impress on the mind; *incidere in mentem*, occur to the mind

animus ad Actg attendere or in or ad Actg intendere, turn one's thoughts to, give heed to; *in animō imprimere*, impress on the mind; *animō infixus*, impressed on the mind; *animus mōbilis*, active mind; *percussit animus*, it struck me; *praesentia animī*, presence of mind

illud mihi succurrit, it comes into my mind
impressiō, impression

cōgitāre, think, meditate; *tōtō pectore c.*, think hard, deeply; **cōgitātiō**, thought, meditation

reor, think

animadvertere, heed, direct the mind to
attentus, attentive, intent on

cōnsiderāre, animō volvere (or volūtāre),
perpendere, reputāre, dēliberāre, agitāre in mente, exāmināre, meditārī, ponderāre, recolere, ponder, consider;
nouns cōnsiderātiō, dēliberātiō, meditātiō; dēliberābundus, deep in thought

cōgitātiōnem ad Ac dīrigere, give one's mind to

rem animō perlūstrāre, survey, consider
ratiōcinārī, reason, draw conclusions;

ratiōcinātiō, logical conclusion

conclūdere, infer, draw conclusion; *noun conclusiō*

sequitur, ut subj., it follows (logically) that
cōgnitiō, study, investigation

crēdere, believe; *vix crēdī potest*, it is scarcely credible

incrēdibile dictū est, it sounds incredible
probābilis, credible

exīstimāre, judge, suppose; *noun exīstimātiō*

mētīrī, pendere, expendere, judge, estimate

animō or mente concipere, animō fingere,
imagine, conceive, comprehend, realise

mente complexī, grasp, comprehend

cōgitātiōne Actg dēpingere, imagine

nōtiō, infōrmātiō, idea, conception

conicere, coniectāre, suspicārī, suspīciōne attingere or assequī, coniectūrā cōsequī,
guess, conjecture; **coniectūra**, guess,
conjecture

suspīciō, conjecture, (vague) idea

intellegere, animō or mente comprehendere,

animō amplectī, understand; *penitus intellegere Actg*, have a thorough grasp of; *nouns intellegentia, comprehēnsiō*

percipere, perceive, understand; *noun perceptiō*

agnōscere, recognise

40.42 opinion/error

opinion

sententia, opinion, judgment; *meā sententiā*, in my opinion; *esse, haerēre, manēre, permanēre, persevērāre, perstāre in eādē sententiā*, remain of the same opinion

opīniō, opinion, conjecture, belief

cōgitātiō, opinion, judgment

putāre, iūdicāre, cēnsere, arbitrārī, opīnārī,
be of opinion, judge, believe, think

placet mihi, I am of opinion, believe

cum Mārcō sentīre, agree with M.; *ā Mārcō sentīre, aliter sentīre ac Mārcus*, hold a different view from M.'s, differ from M.

eādē sentīre, hold the same sentiments

assentīre Dpn, agree with

nūllō recūsante, with no dissentient

cōsentīre cum Ab, be in agreement with;

cōsentiunt unō ore omnēs, they are unanimous; *parum cōsentiō cum Ab*, do not agree with

inter sē discrepāre or dissentīre, dissidēre,
disagree, be of different opinions; *nouns dissēnsiō, discrepantia*

error

minus (or haud rēctē) intellegere,
misunderstand

cōfundere, disconcert, perplex

error, errātum, mistake; *errōribus*

implicārī, be involved in e.; *animus in errōrem indūcere*, lead astray; *errōrem fēcī*, I was mistaken; *Dpn errōrem ēripere, tollere, extorquēre*, remove e.; *errōrem dēpōnere*, abandon e.; *verb errāre*

mendum, fault, blunder; *adj. mendōsus*

mentiēns, fallacy

in fraudem incidere or dēlābī, make a mistake

litūra, correction

corrīgere, ēmendāre, correct; *nouns corrēctiō, ēmendātiō*

q.v. true, false, 43

40.43 know/evident

know, discover, be certain

scīre, know; *certō scīre*, know for a fact, be certain

sentīre, be or become aware of; *quod sēnserim*, as far as I am aware

nōvisse, know; **nōtitia**, acquaintance, knowledge

nōtus, **nōbilis**, known, notorious; *satis n.*, well known; **nōbilitāre**, make famous or notorious

rem manū tenēre, have a sure knowledge of

certus, certain; *Actg certum or prō certō habēre or certum scīre*, know for sure

explōrātus, established, certain, sure

stabilis, certain, definite

certē, **certō**, **sine dubiō**, **sine ūllā**

dubitātiōne, without doubt

profectō, certainly, for sure, indeed

cōgnōscere, discover (facts)

perspicere, recognise, come to know

comperire, **reperire**, find out, ascertain;

compertum habēō (or mihi est), I know well, attain to certainty

cōnstat, it is well known; *c. inter omnēs*, it is allowed, agreed by all, generally accepted

clear, plain, evident

liquet, **manīfēstum est**, it is clear

expressus, visible, clear, plain

(*satis*) **appāret**, it is evident; **apertē**, openly, plainly

perspicuus, clear, manifest; *noun perspicuitās*

clārus, plain, evident; **praeclārus**, very clear

patēre, be clear, evident

plānus, plain; *plānum facere*, make clear;

plānē, clearly, distinctly

40.44 not know, be uncertain

nescīre, **īgnōrāre**, not know, be unaware;

noun īgnōrātiō

īgnārus, **imprūdēns**, unaware; *noun*

imprūdentia

īnsciūs, **nesciūs**, not knowing, ignorant; *nōn*

sum īnsciūs, I am well aware

mē īnsciō, **mē īnsciente**, without my knowledge

īgnōtus, **incōgnitus**, unknown

vagus, vague, indefinite

fallere, escape notice

quid sit ambigitur, it is uncertain; **ambiguus**, uncertain

dubitāre, doubt; *dubitārī potest*, it is open to question; **dubitātiō**, uncertainty; **dubius**, wavering, doubtful; *in dubium venīre*, become doubtful

anceps, doubtful, uncertain; *haud a.*, decisive

vānus, false, untrustworthy; *noun vānitās*

obscūrus, indistinct, unintelligible; *noun obscūrītās*

adumbrātus, sketched, outlined, indistinct; *noun adumbrātiō*

haesitāre, be at a loss; *noun haesitātiō*

flūctuāre, waver, be uncertain

animī or animō pendēre, be perplexed, in suspense

tītubāre, waver, falter, be embarrassed

forte, **fortāsse**, **forsitan** (*with subj.*), perhaps
vērī similis, probable; **vērī similiter**, probably;
vērī similitūdō, probability

40.45 remember

meminisse, **commemorāre**, **reminīscī**,

recordārī, **memoriā tenēre or retinēre or**

cūstōdīre, **in memoriā redigere**,

repetere *Ac in memoriā or memoriā G*,

recōgnōscere, **redūcere in memoriā**, call to mind, recollect

memoriā redintegrāre, refresh the m.

in memoriā penitus īnsidēre, be firmly fixed in the mind

memoriae mandāre, impress on the mind

memoriae prōdere, record

memoriā G prōdere, hand down

venit mihi in mentem, **animō teneō**, I recollect

memoria, memory; *memoriā vigēre*, have a good memory

commemorātiō, remembrance

memor, mindful; **memoriter**, from memory

recordātiō, recollection, remembrance

monēre, **admonēre**, remind; *noun monitiō*

commemorāre, remind of

commonēre, **commonefacere**, remind forcibly

40.46 forget

oblīvīscī, forget; *noun obliviō*; *in*

obliviōnem G veniō or capit mē obliviō

G, forget; *obliviōne obruī*, *in*

obliviōne iacēre, be forgotten;

obliviōnī dare, consign to oblivion; *ab*

obliviōne vindicāre, rescue from

oblivion

dēpōnere ex memoriā, forget
excidere, escape (memory); *mihi ista exciderant*, I had forgotten these things
memoriā dīlābī, escape the memory
reī memoriā tollere, erase from the memory
nihil tē effugiet, you will forget nothing
in praeteritīs relinquere, forget to mention
immemor, oblīviōsus, forgetful; *immemor sum*, forget

40.51 cause, reason

cūr? quid? quāre? quamobrem? why?
causa, cause; *causae D esse*, be the cause of; *causam inferre*, allege c.
facere, facessere or efficere Ac or ut subj., cause, bring about
per mē fit, ut subj., I am the cause of
● **ratio**, ground, motive, reason; **ratiuncula**, poor, inadequate reason
per mē stat, quōminus subj. I am the cause of
nōn or nihil habeō, quod subj., I have no reason to
est cūr or quod subj., there is cause to ...
nihil est quod (cūr, quamobrem) subj., there is no reason why
ratio, reason, motive
mē auctōre, at my suggestion, instigation
frūstrā Actg facere, do without good cause, groundlessly
immeritō accūsāre, accuse undeservedly, without cause
meritō, deservedly, with good cause

40.52 effect

quia, quod, propterea quod or quia, because
ob Ac, propter Ac, on account of
eō, therefore, for that reason
effectus, effect
ēventum, ēventus, consequence, result, issue
fētus, fruit, produce, e.g. *animī*
frūgēs (e.g. *industriāe*), result
frūctum Gtg or ex Abtg percipere or capere, reap the fruit of; *frūctum cōsequī*, obtain a result, return

q.v. good and bad fortune, 32.2, 32.3

40.61 plan

cōsiliūm, plan; c. *capere, inīre*, adopt or form a p.; c. *frangere*, spoil, bring to nought a p.
ratio, plan; *ratiōne et viā*, methodically
dēscriptus, well planned
dispositē, methodically
in animō habeō, mihi in animō est, I intend
Actg animō intendere, plan
quid tendit? what is his object?
animō or cum animō or in mente or sēcum agitāre Ac or dē Ab, intend, plan
scelus concipere, plan a crime
cōgitāre, intend, plan; *noun cōgitatiō meditārī with inf.*, intend
īnstitūtum, settled plan, course
prōpositum, plan, purpose; p. *tenēre*, keep to one's plan; p. *assequī*, attain one's plan
eā or hāc mente, with this intention
cōnsultō, dē industriā, with deliberation, by design, on purpose
eō cōsiliō, ut ..., with the intention of
īnsidiae, artēs, schemes (to deceive), trickery

40.62 without plan

cōnfūsus, confused, muddled; *noun cōnfūsiō*
inconditus, irregular, without order
nūllā ratiōne, without method
cāsū, forte, fortuitō, temere, temere ac fortuitō, casually, by chance, at random
incōnsultē, thoughtlessly

40.7 books

liber, book; *librōs ēdere, scripta forās dare*, publish
scriptum, something written; *P scripta*, books, works, treatises
volūmen, book (rolled), volume
cōdex, book (*with flat leaves*)
pugillārēs P, libellus, notebook
tabella, document, record
commentāriū, memoirs
libellus, cōnscriptiō, treatise
pāgina, page

legere, read; **perlegere**, read through; **vorāre**, read eagerly; **pervolūtāre**, read carefully; **lēctiō**, reading, perusal; **lēctor**, reader
recitāre, read out
anagnōstēs, reader

ēvolvere or **explicāre**, (unfold and) read; *noun*
ēvolūtio
scriptor, author
compōnere, cōnscribere (*librum, epistulam*), compose, write
stilus, composition, style of composition;
artifex s., artistic style

bibliothēca, library
librārius, late, bookseller
taberna librāria, bookshop
capsa, scrīnium, cista, librārium, pēgma,
bookcase
umbilicus, projecting end of cylinder on which
book was rolled

40.8 writing

scribere, write; *apertē s.*, write freely,
without reserve
dēscribere, copy, transcribe, draw
exscribere, copy
perscribere, write down in full, record
accurately; **perscriptio**, record, entry
litteris mandāre, commit to writing
litūra, erasure; **stilum vertere**, erase, correct
inscribere *Dtg* or **in Abtg**, write in or on; *noun*
inscriptio
titulus, inscription, title
exarāre, jot down
trāscribere, trāscribere (in tabulās), copy
in tabulās, in cōdicem referre, enter, register
rēs per scripturam amplecti, treat in writing
scrība, (public) writer, secretary
librārius, transcriber of books, copyist,
secretary
ā manū servus, late, secretary

membrāna, parchment
charta, paper
calamus, (reed) pen; *calamum sūmere*, take up
one's p.
ātramentum, ink
tabula, tabella, (wax-covered) slate, writing
tablet
cēra, writing-tablet
triplicēs, writing tablet with three leaves
stilus, iron pen, style; *stilum vertere*, erase
dictāre, dictate

q.v. prose, 42.1

q.v. verse, 42.2

q.v. language, 42.3

40.9 letters

litterae P, letter; *litterās mittere ad Acpn*,
send a l. to; *Dpn litterās remittere*,
write a reply to; *litterās dare, post a l.*;
litterās reddere, deliver a l.; *litterae*
mihi ā Mārcō allātae sunt, I have
received a l. from M.; *litterās dare et*
accipere, correspond; *litteris*
perfertur ad mē, I am informed by l.; *Hās*
litterās Nōnis Mārtilis scribēbam (I
am writing; in Latin, past tense, from
recipient's point of view) atque orō
(entreaty remains a present wish) tē, ut
quam primum rescribās

epistula, letter; *Acpn longis epistulis*
obtundere, molest with lengthy l.;
epistularum cōsuētūdō, correspondence

cōdicillī P, note, short letter

diem in epistulā ascribere, add the date
epistulam patrī inscribere, address letter to
one's father

interiōre epistulā, in the body of the letter
epistulam conclūdere, end letter; **clausula**,
conclusion of letter

obsignāre or signāre epistulam, seal letter
respondere, rescribere, answer

litterās or respōsum reddere, give an a.; *r.*
ferre, receive an a.; *r. referre, bring an*
a.

tabellārius, letter-carrier, postman, courier

SVBEEV (sī valēs bene est ego valeō),

formula at beginning of letters

impertit tibi multam salutem, sends you his
kind regards

Mārcum velim salvēre iubeās, my kind
regard to M.

Dpn plūrimam salutem referre, reciprocate
good wishes

Valē or cūrā ut valeās or fac valeās, formula
at end of letters

sum vester tōtus, yours sincerely

41 VOICE, SPEECH

41.11

vōx, voice, *also* word; *clārā* (*or* *māgnā*) *vōce*, with a loud v.; *summissā vōce*, softly; *pressā*, *suppressā vōce*, in a subdued, low voice; *vōcem attenuāre*, speak falsetto; *vōcem profundere*, utter a word

loquī, speak, talk; *pūrē et Latīnē loquī*, speak plainly, right out, not to beat about the bush; **locūtīō**, speaking, language

grande genus loquendī, sublime language; **grandiloquus**, speaking loftily, grandiloquent

ūber (*in dicendō*), copious; *noun ūbertās subtiliter dīcere*, speak simply; *noun subtilitās*

loquāx, linguā prōmptus, talkative; *noun loquācītās*

redundāns, verbose

nōn inops verbīs, of ready speech

mōbilitās linguae, volubility

taciturnus, not talkative, laconic; *noun taciturnitās*

verbum, word; *ad v.*, word for word, literally, *also* *verbum ē (ex) verbō* (of a single word), *verbum prō verbō* (of a passage); *ūnō verbō*, *paucīs verbīs*, briefly; *multis verbīs*, at great length; *verbīs pressus*, precise; *verba sonantiōra*, well-sounding words; *aucupium verbōrum*, quibbling

syllaba, syllable

vocābulum, word, designation

lingua, ōrātiō, speech, language

convertere (librum ē Graecō in Latīnum), translate

dēclāmāre, practise speaking, declaim;

dēclāmitāre, practise declamation; *nouns*

dēclāmātiō, dēclāmātor

prōnūntiāre, recite

ēloquī, speak out, speak plainly, declare

appellātiō, pronunciation

lentus in dīcendō, drawing

litterās dilātāre, drawl

mussāre, mutter

litteram obscūrāre, slur a letter (*in pronouncing*)

titubāre, balbūtire, linguā haerēre, stutter;

haesitantia linguae, stuttering; *adj. balbus*

hālucinārī, inānī vōce sonāre, talk idly, talk nonsense

effūtire, blab out, chatter

garrīre, chat, talk nonsense

infāns, unable to speak, speechless

41.21 [sic]

dīcere, say, speak; *praecīsē*, *pressē d.*, speak concisely; *difficile (prōclīve) dictū*, hard (easy) to say; *solūtissimus in dīcendō*, a very ready speaker; **dictiō**, delivery

dictum, saying; **dicta P**, words

verbum or verba facere, verba habēre, speak

aiō, inquam, I say

ēnūntiāre, declare, express

indīcere, declare

nōmen G ēdere, state the name of

recitāre, recite; *nouns recitātiō, recitātor*

ōrātiō, speech, style; *ōrātiōnem commentārī, comparāre, compōnere, facere, cōnficere*, compose a speech; *ōrātiōnem habēre apud Ac*, make a speech before

ēlocūtīō, oratorical delivery, elocution


īfantia, want of eloquence

exōrdium, introduction (of speech)

perōrāre, conclude a speech; *noun perōrātiō*

ōrātor, speaker

cōntiō, public meeting; *cōntiōnem habēre*, address a p. m.; *advocāre cōntiōnem*, summon a p. m.

 **cōntiōnārī**, harangue, address

verba apud populum facere, address the people

41.12

clāmāre, exclāmāre, inclāmāre, prōclāmāre,

shout; *clāmātum est*, a cry was raised;

nouns clāmor, exclāmātiō, shout; *clāmor*

fit, there is a shout; *clāmōrem tollere*,

ēdere, raise a shout; *laetantium or*

exsultantium c., shouts of joy, triumph;

clāmor excitātus, loud shouting;

clāmātor, bawler

conclāmāre, shout together, raise a cry; *māgnā vōce c.*, roar

reclāmāre, cry out against

clāmitāre, call violently or loudly

vōcem obtundere, shout oneself hoarse

ululāre, howl, yell, shriek

vāgīre, cry (of babies), squall

personāre, call out

praedicāre, proclaim, publish; **praedicātiō**, announcement

acclāmāre, obstrepere, shout at, disapprove (*accl. also applaud*); *noun acclāmātiō*

advocāre, call to (espec. for help or advice)
dēvocāre, call down or away
sēvocāre, **āvocāre**, call away or aside
revocāre, call back
excīre, call forth
vōciferārī, roar, scream, bawl

41.22

sermō, conversation, discussion;
sermunculus, tittle-tattle
contrōversia, dispute, debate; *contrōversiam*
dirimere *or* *minuere*, adjust or settle a
dispute
colloquī, converse, have a conference with;
colloquium, conversation, conference; *ad*
c. *admittere*, receive in audience; *c.*
dirimere, break up *c.*
fatīgāre *Acpn verbīs*, importune
cōnsilium, consultation, deliberation; *Acpn in*
c. *advocāre*, call in; *cōnsiliis*
interesse, take part in *c.*; **cōnsiliārī**,
consult, take counsel
disserere, **disputāre**, **disceptāre**, discuss,
debate; *nouns* **disputātiō**, **disceptātiō**
tractāre, handle, discuss

41.12 (continued)

gemere, groan; **ingemiscere** *D or in Ab*, groan
over; *noun* **gemitus**
susurrāre, whisper, mutter; *noun* **susurrus**
summissā vōce, softly; **submissiō** (e.g. *vōcis*,
ōrātiōnis), lowering (of voice), quiet
manner (of speech)

41.13 song

canere, **cantāre**, sing; **cantitāre**, sing often
cantor, singer
cantus, **carmen**, song, melody; *carmen*
canere, *dīcere*
cantilēna, sing-song
concinere, sing together; *noun* **concentus**,
song, harmony

41.23 oratory

ars dīcendī, eloquence, oratory; **ratiō dīcendī**,
rhētorica (*S or P*), **rhētoricē**, rhetoric;
dīcendī magister, **rhētor**, teacher of
rhetoric; **palaestra**, school of rhetoric
suggestum, platform, stage

fācundus (*late*), fluent, eloquent; *noun*
fācundia (*late*)
ēloquī, speak as an orator, eloquently;
ēloquēns, eloquent; *noun* **ēloquentia**; *dare*
sē studiō ēloquentiae, devote oneself to
the study of *e.*

facilis ad dīcendum, ready of speech
disertus, fluent
suāvis, agreeable, attractive; *noun* **suāvitās**
festīvus, humorous, witty; *noun* **festīvitās**
dīcāx, witty, sarcastic
lepidus, smart, witty; *noun* **lepor**
urbānus, elegant, witty, facetious; *noun*
urbānitās
facētus, humorous, facetious; **facētia**, wit,
pleasantry, witticisms
salsus, acute, witty; **sāl**, wit, facetiousness,
drollery, sarcasm

41.31 address, question

alloquī, address; *noun* **alloquium**
adīre ad Ac, address (in speech or writing)
appellāre, address, accost
rogāre, **interrogāre**, **scīscitārī**, ask, inquire;
interrogandō urgēre, beset with
questions; *noun* **interrogātiō**
quaerere, ask, inquire; *illud quaeritur*, the
real question is
percontārī, question strictly, investigate; *noun*
percontātiō
vocāre, call; **vocātus**, calling, invocation
arcessere, summon
convocāre, **ēvocāre**, call together

41.32 answer

respondēre *Dpn*, answer, reply to; *noun*
respōsum; *r.* *reddere*, give an answer;
r. *ab Abpn ferre*, receive an answer from
referre, reply
oppōnere, object, retort
cōnfūtāre, **redarguere**, **refellere**, **refūtāre**,
revincere, disprove, confute, contradict;
noun **refūtātiō**
obloquī, contradict
īnfitiārī, **īnfitiās īre**, deny, disown

41.33 greeting

salūs, salutation, greeting; *verb* **salūtāre**
quid agis? how are you?
Mārcum meum salūtā nostrīs verbīs, greet
my friend M. on my behalf, give him my
kind regards

salūtem mittere per Ac, send greeting by
occursātiō, greeting
salvē, salvētō, salvēte, how do you do?
salvēre iubeō, I bid you good day; *Mārcum*
iubē salvēre, greet M. for me
valē or valeās, good-bye; *colloquially*, **bene**
valē, bene ambulā
valēre iubeō or dīcō, or valedīcō, I bid good-
 bye
avē, avētō, avēte, and **salvus sīs**, used both at
meeting and parting

41.4 declare

affirmāre, cōnfirmāre, assert, declare,
 corroborate; *nouns affirmātiō, cōnfirmātiō*
assevērāre, maintain, assure
dēmōnstrāre, ostendere, point out, state; *noun*
dēmōnstrātiō
dictitāre, assert, allege, pretend
dēclārāre, show, declare, explain, testify;
noun dēclārātiō
profitērī, declare openly
mentiō, mention; *mentiōnem facere*, mention
afferre, assert

relate, announce

narrāre, persequī, memorāre,
commemorāre, trādere, tell, relate, recount
ēnarrāre, recount fully, explain in detail
narrātiō, historia, story, narrative
propōnere, expōnere, explicāre, exsequī, set
 forth, set before; *nouns explicātiō, expositiō*
referre, report, relate
nūntiāre, prōnūntiāre, announce, report;
nūntius, messenger, message;
prōnūntiātor, narrator
dēnūntiāre, announce (officially); *noun*
dēnūntiātiō
rēs perfertur, it is announced
renūntiāre, proclaim, announce (officially);
noun renūntiātiō

q.v. history, 42.1

41.5 promise

prōmittere, pollicērī, recipere, promise;
nouns prōmissum, prōmissiō (pollicitātiō
not Ci); *prōmissa facere*, make p.;
prōmissa ab Abpn exigere, exact p.
spondēre, promise (solemnly), pledge oneself;
noun spōnsiō
fidem dare Dpn dē Abtg or inter sē, promise

fidem suam in Actg interpōnere, pledge one's
 word
fidem praestāre, fidem suam liberāre, fidem
or prōmissa servāre, prōmissa patrāre,
prōmissis stāre, keep one's word
impleō quod pollicitus sum, carry out my
 promise
fidem fallere or frangere or violāre, break
 one's promise
fidem hostī datam fallere, break one's parole

41.61 persuade, urge

- **suādēre, persuādēre**, persuade, urge upon,
 advocate; *frātrī illud persuāsit; mihi*
persuāsum est, persuāsum habeō, I am
 convinced; *persuādērī mihi nōn potest*,
 I cannot be persuaded; *noun persuāsiō*
impellere Acpn ad or in Actg, persuade, urge
 to; *nouns impulsīō, impulsus*
addūcere, induce, persuade
Acpn ad or in suam sententiam perdūcere,
 win over
monēre, admonēre, praemonēre, advise,
 admonish, warn; *nouns monitiō, admonitiō;*
monita, admonitions
- **hortārī, adhortārī, cohortārī, incitāre**,
 lacesere, exhort, urge; *adhortantis vōx*,
 words of encouragement; *nouns hortātiō,*
adhortātiō, cohortātiō, hortātor,
adhortātor; incitātiō, inciting;
incitāmentum, incentive
īnstīgāre, īnstinguere, urge, incite; *noun*
īnstīnctus

41.62 dissuade, threaten

- **dissuādēre, dēhortārī**, dissuade, advise
 against
- *Acpn dē sententiā movēre or ā prōpositō*
flectere, dissuade
praedixit, nē id faceret, he warned him not to
 do it
minārī, minitārī, threaten; **minae**, threats;
minās iactāre, throw out threats; **minātiō**,
 threat; **mināx**, threatening
impendere Dpn or in Acpn imminēre Dpn,
 threaten (of danger, etc.)
dēnūntiāre, threaten, denounce
mortem prōpōnere, threaten with death

41.71 praise

laus, praise; *laude afficere*, praise; *omni*
laude cumulāre, heap praises on; *laudibus*

in caelum ferre *or* (ad caelum)
efferre, illūstrāre, extol; laudēs *Gpn*
in astra tollere, praise exceedingly;
laudem ex *Abtg* excipere, get credit for;
summam *Dpn* laudem tribuere, praise
extremely

laudāre, praise; **collaudāre**, praise very much,
extol; *nouns* **laudātiō**, **collaudātiō**,
commendation, eulogy; **laudātor**, one who
praises; *adj.* **laudābilis**, praiseworthy
ōrnāre, **celebrāre**, **praedicāre**, **ad caelum**
extollere, praise, extol, sound the praises of;
noun **praedicātiō**

praecōnium *Dpn* tribuere, eulogise
assentārī, flatter; *nouns* **assentātiō**, **assentātor**
adulārī, flatter, fawn upon; *nouns* **adulātiō**,
adulātor

blandus, flattering; *verb* **blandīrī**; *nouns*
blanditia, **blandīmentum**

plaudere, applaud, approve; **plausus**,
acclamation

approbāre, **probāre**, approve, recommend;
tibi probātur, it is approved by you;
nouns **approbātiō**, **approbātor**

comprobāre, approve, assent to, sanction

41.72 blame, abuse

culpa, blame; *verb* **culpāre**

probrum, reproach, insult
invehī in *Ac*, attack (in words)

accūsāre, **compellāre**, **incūsāre**, **increpāre**,
increpitāre, **īnsectārī**, **reprehendere**,
īnsequī, **obiürgāre**, blame, rebuke, censure,
tax with; **animadversio**, **compellātiō**,
reprehēnsiō, **īnsectātiō**, **obiürgātiō**, blame

improbāre, disapprove, blame

condemnāre *Acpn G* fault, blame, e.g.
aliquem inertiae

exagitāre *Actg Gpn*, attack, censure

nihil tēcum dē hīs rēbus expostulō, I find no
fault with you on this score; **expostulātiō**,
complaint

vituperāre, find fault with, censure, disparage;
nouns **vituperātiō**, **vituperātor**

obtrectāre *D*, disparage, underrate; *nouns*
obtrectātiō, **obtrectātor**

de *Gpn* **fāmā dētrahere**, disparage, impair the
credit of

obicere, **obiectāre**, **exprobrāre** *Actg Dpn*,
taunt with, reproach; *nouns* **obiectātiō**,
exprobrātiō

īnsultāre, taunt, abuse

īnsimulāre *Acpn Gtg*, tax with (*espec. falsely*)

hōc tibi vitiō vertō or dō, impute this to you
as a fault

tē *Gtg* **damnō**, censure you for

notāre, censure, reprimand

contumēlia, abuse, insult, invective; *Acpn*
verbōrum contumēliis lacerāre, abuse
violently; *aperire Acpn* contumēliis,
overwhelm with abuse; **contumēliōsus**,
abusive

convīcium, abuse, reproach, censure

crīminārī, calumniate

maledīcere, abuse, slander; **maledicus**,
scurrilous, slanderous; **maledicta** *P*, abuse,
slander; **tē malēdictis onerō**, heap abuse
on you

dētrahere, disparage

fāmam *Gpn* **īnquināre**, besmirch a man's
good name

41.8 silence

silēre, be silent (make no noise); *noun*

silentium; *s.* **facere**, observe silence; *adv.*

silentiō, in silence, silently

tacēre, **reticēre**, be silent (not speak); *noun*
reticentia

obmūtēscere, become dumb

tacitus, silent; **mē tacitō**, if I say nothing

mūtus, dumb, silent

Actg **silentiō praeterīre**, pass over in silence
verba mē dēficiunt, **ōrātiō mē dēficit**, words
fail me

conticēscere, cease speaking, hold one's peace

reticēre, be silent; *noun* **reticentia**

linguam continēre or moderārī, keep silent

41.91 topic and digression

materia, subject-matter, topic

argūmentum, subject, theme

● **prōpositum**, **prōpositiō**, theme; *ā* **prōpositō**
aberrāre or ēgredī, digress from the main
point; *ad* **prōpositum redīre or revertī**,
return to the m. p.

quaestiō, subject of investigation

dēgredī, **dīgredī**, digress; *noun* **dīgressiō**

ōrātiō longius excurrit, there is a long

digression; **excursiō**, **excursus**, digression

dēclīnātiō, digression

redeāmus ad illud unde dēvertimus, let us
take up our main point after the digression

41.92 interrupt, pause

interpellāre, interrupt; *noun* **interpellātiō**

interrumpere (e.g. *ōrātiōnem*), break off
intervenire *Dtg*, interrupt; *noun* **interventor**
intermittere, allow to intervene; *trīduō*
intermissō, after an interval of three days;
intermissiō, pause, interval
intervallum, interval, pause; *sine*
intervallō, uninterrupted

42.1 prose

verba or ōrātiō solūta, prose
narrātiō, narrative
historia, narrative, tale, story; history
apologus, story, fairy tale, fable
fābula, story (fiction); **fābella**, short story
narrātor, story-teller
narrātor, historicus, rērum scrīptor,
historian
rēs gestae, history; *r. g. Rōmānōrum*, Roman
h.
annāles, records
fāstī, chronicle
auctor, author (*spec. historian*)

42.2 verse

versus, verse, poetry
carmen, poem; poetry
poēma, poem, *P*, poetry; **poēsis**, poem, poetry;
adj. poēticus
ecloga, short poem, eclogue
versus, line
poēma compōnere, carmen condere, write a
p.
modus, rhythm, harmony
numerus, rhythm, cadence
poēta, poet; **poētria**, poetess; **fidicen** (*poet.*),
(lyric) poet
carmen or poēma compōnere or pangere,
write verse
ex tempore, on the spur of the moment
afflātus (dīvīnus), permōtiō mentis dīvīna,
inspiration
furor, frenzy

42.3

lingua, language; *Gallicae linguae*
scientiam habere, know the language of
Gaul
sermō, language; *in Latīnō sermōne*, in
Latin

trāferre or trānsferre, translate; *verba*
trālāta, translated expressions; **trā- or**
trānslātiō, translation
interpres, interpreter, translator; **interpretārī**,
translate; *noun* **interpretātiō**

43.1 true

vērus, true; *vēra dicit*, he is speaking the
truth; *vēra et falsa*, truth and falsehood;
vēritās, truth, truthfulness; *manere in*
vēritāte, adhere to the truth; **vēridicus**,
truthful
vērē, truly, in fact
rēvērā, really
vēritātis studiōsus, strictly truthful
vērāx, veracious
locuplēs, worthy of credence, trustworthy
rēctus, right, correct, proper, accurate
rīte, fitly, rightly
solidus, sincērus, genuine, sound, real
fāma, rumor, audītiō, report, rumour,
hearsay; *levis audītiō*, unfounded report;
rumōrem spargere or dissipāre, spread a
report
in sermōnem hominum venire, get talked
about
rūmusculī P, idle talk, gossip
ferunt or fertur, men say, it is reported, there
is a story

43.2 false

falsus, false, untrue, unreal, groundless; *adv.*
falsō
fictus, mentītus (*poet.*), **fūcātus, fūcōsus**,
spurious, false, fictitious, counterfeit;
fictum, fiction, deception
mentīrī, lie, deceive; **mendāx**, untruthful, *as*
noun liar; **mendācium**, lie, falsehood;
dīcere m., tell a lie
ēmentīrī, feign, allege falsely, fabricate
ā vērītāte dēflectere, depart from the truth
commentus, commentūcius, invented,
fictitious; **commentum**, fiction, lie
calumnia, false statement, misrepresentation;
calumniārī, misrepresent, blame unjustly
dētorquere, misrepresent
in errōrem indūcere, mislead
dēcipere, deceive
fūcus, pretence
suprālātiō, trāiectiō, exaggeration

q.v. error, 40.42

q.v. *fraud*, 47.4

43.3 proof

experīri, perīclitārī, make trial of, put to the test; **experīmentum**, proof; **perīculum**, trial, proof; *Gpn fideī p. facere*, test one's good faith

indiciūm, token, proof

• **argūmentum**, proof, evidence; a. *petere*, seek; *afferre or prōmere*, adduce, bring forward; *sūmere*, get; *cōnfīrmāre*, corroborate; **argūmentārī**, prove, adduce as proof

testimōniūm, evidence

probāre, approbāre, prove, demonstrate;
noun approbātiō

convincere (e.g. *errōres Gpn*), demonstrate
ēvidēns, manifest, obvious

44 EMOTIONS

44.0

flagrāre, inflammārī, ārdēre, glow, be stirred, e.g. *dēsideriō, amōre, odiō*

exagitāre, excitāre, incendere, perciēre, permovēre, rouse, stimulate, stir up, excite;
nouns incendium, e.g. *invidiae*; **permōtiō**, excitement, emotion

(animūm) movēre, commovēre, touch (the heart), make an impression; **afficere** (*dolōre*, etc.), affect; **affectus**, mood, state of mind

commōtus, excited, aroused; **commōtiō**, excitement

animūm exsuscitāre, excite

afferre (*dolōrem, spem*, etc.), cause

ēlātiō, transport

fervor animī, ārdor, ardour, passion; **fervēns, fervidus**, inflamed, passionate

flamma, passion, e.g. *amōris, invidiae*

movērī, be touched, e.g. *lacrimīs*; **mōtus**, emotion, passion

stimulus, torment, incitement; **stimulāre**, goad, spur on, incite

cruciāre, discrucīāre, excrucīāre, exedere, torquēre, torment, torture; **cruciātus, tormentum**, torture, anguish

tābēscere (e.g. *dēsideriō, dolōre*), be consumed

pellere, affect, impress

percutere, perturbāre, affect deeply, make an impression on; *noun perturbātiō*

incumbere (e.g. *in aliquod studium, in cupiditātem*), incline to, devote oneself to
prōnus, prōpēnsus ad Actg, inclined to
prōpendēre ad Actg, be inclined to

endure, suffer

ferre, perferre, sufferre, endure, bear
patī, bear, endure; *aequō animō p.*, bear calmly, with equanimity or resignation;
patientia, patience

perpetī, endure, bear steadfastly; **perpessiō**, endurance

sustinēre (e.g. *vim hostium*), endure, withstand

tolerāre, bear, endure, put up with
intolerābilis, intolerandus, unbearable

allay, assuage, relieve, soothe

lēnīre, mītigāre, mitigate, assuage, soothe, appease

cohibēre, repress, hold in check

subvenīre with D, relieve, remedy

exaurīre Dpn dolōrem, relieve one of sorrow

eximere Dpn cūrās, rid one of cares

temperāre, moderate, soothe

mulcēre, permulcēre, soothe

ērigere, cheer up

cōnsōlārī, levāre, relevāre, sublevāre, sōlārī (plp.), comfort, relieve; **cōnsōlātiō**, consolation; **sōlāciūm**, what brings

consolation; *hōc māgnō est sōlāciō*, is a great consolation; *hōc sōlāciō ūtor*, this comforts me

dolōris fōmentum, alleviation of pain, sorrow

levāmen, levāmentum, comfort, alleviation

resīdere, abate, subside (e.g. *tumor animī resēdit*)

44.1 joy, satisfaction

• **gaudium**, (inward) joy; *P*, signs of joy;

gaudēre, rejoice; *in sinū g.*, keep one's joy to oneself

triumphāre, rejoice

dēlectāre, oblectāre, delight, give pleasure;
noun dēlectātiō, oblectāmentum,

oblectātiō

dēliciae, cause of delight

iuvat (perf. iūvit) mē, cordī est mihi, it pleases me

fruī Abtg, enjoy; **perfruī**, enjoy thoroughly
libenter, gladly

gestīre, rejoice, exult

laetus, glad, joyous; *noun laetitia*, (manifested) joy; *laetitiā efferrī*, be transported with j.; *laetitiam dare Dpn*, gladden; *percipere laetitiam ex Abtg*, get j. from; **laetārī** *Ab* or **dē** *Ab*, rejoice in **exultāre**, rejoice, exult; *noun exultātiō* **in caelō esse**, be very happy **festīvus**, lively, gay, joyous, merry **alacer**, glad; *noun alacritās* **hilaris**, cheerful, merry; *noun hilaritās*; *verbs hilarāre, exhilarāre* **lascīvus**, frolicsome; **lascīvia**, playfulness **bonō animō esse**, be of good cheer **voluptās**, pleasure; *voluptātem percipere*, feel p.; *voluptātibus fruī*, *voluptātēs haurīre*, enjoy, indulge in p.; *tōtum sē voluptātibus trādere*, give oneself entirely to p.; **homō voluptārius**, voluptuary **grātus**, pleasing, agreeable **placēre**, please; *hōc mihi placet*, I like this **beātus, fēlix**, happy; *vīta beāta*, happiness; *nouns beātītās, beātītūdō, fēlicitās*

44.2 sorrow, anger

sērius, grave, serious **dolor**, sorrow, distress, ache, suffering; *stimulī dolōris, pangs*; *dolōre permōtus*, moved by grief; *hīc mē d. tangit*, this grieves me; *dolōrem haurīre*, suffer pain; *dolōrem cōnsōlandō levāre*, soothe the sorrowing; *dolōrī indulgēre*, give way to distress; *dolōribus premī, angī, frangī*, be crushed by grief; *dolōre prīvāre*, free from sorrow; **dolēre**, be sad **lūctus**, affliction, mourning; *lūctum haurīre*, be afflicted; **lūctuosus**, mournful, pitiable; **lūctificus**, causing sorrow; **lūgēre**, mourn **aerumna**, trouble, affliction **aeger animī**, distress; *noun aegritūdō*, grief, sorrow **multa mē angunt**, I am much distressed; *noun angor*; *adj. ānxius, whence ānxiētās, ānxiūdō* **vexāre**, distress, worry; *nouns vexātiō, vexātor* **stimulāre**, vex, disturb; **stimulus**, torment, pang **trīstis**, sad; *noun trīstītia* **maestus**, sad; *nouns maeror, maestītia*; *in maerōre iacēre*, be in deep sorrow; *in mediō maerōre*, in the depths of sorrow; *verb maerēre* **animum contrahere** or **dēmittere**, lose heart **afflictus**, dejected, desponding

(**animus**) **abiectus, dēmissus, oppressus**, dejected, depressed; *noun abiectiō* **īnfrāctiō, contractiō** or **dēmissiō animī**, depression **flēre**, weep, bewail; *noun flētus*; *adj. flēbilis*, lamentable, tearful **lacrimāre, lacrimās profundere** or **effundere**, weep **collacrimāre, illacrimāre**, weep at or over, lament **plōrāre, complōrāre, dēplōrāre, lāmentārī, dēflēre**, wail, lament, regret, deplore; *nouns plōrātus, lāmenta (P), lāmentātiō*; *adj. lāmentābilis*, lamenting, full of sorrow **gemere**, wail **plangor**, wailing, lamentation **querī, conquerī**, bewail, complain of; **querēla, querimōnia, questiō, questus, conquestiō**, lament, complaint **dēsiderāre**, miss; *noun dēsiderium*, grief (at loss) **singultus**, sobbing; *verb singultāre* **ingrātus**, unpleasant, disagreeable, distasteful **displicēre**, displease **miser**, wretched; **miseria**, unhappiness; *miseriārum incendia*, a sea of evils **īnfēlix**, unhappy

satisfacere, satisfy; *noun satisfactiō* **probāre**, be satisfied with, approve; *sē Dpn p.*, make oneself acceptable to **illud satis habeō dīcere**, am satisfied to say this **contentus**, content; *suā sorte c.*, satisfied with his lot **tranquillus**, unruffled; *noun tranquillitās* **placidus, plācātus, sēdātus**, calm, peaceful; **sēdāre**, allay, calm **sēcūrus**, free from care, untroubled; *noun sēcūritās* **lēnis**, gentle, calm; *noun lēnitās* **mītis**, calm, placid **īram pōnere** or **īrae moderārī**, cease to be angry

īra, anger; *īrae indulgēre*, give way to anger; *illud mē īrā affēcit*, it made me angry **īrācundia**, hasty temper, rage; *īrācundiam cohibēre*, restrain temper

irāscī, grow angry; **irātus**, **irā incensus** or **commotus**, **iracundus**, angry, irritable; **iracundia**, hastiness of temper, wrath, passion; *iracundiā permotus*, moved by anger; *ad iracundiam adducere*, *irā afficere* *Acpn*, make angry
suscensere, be angry, cherish anger, be inflamed with wrath
graviter (aegrē, molestē) ferre, resent, be annoyed
offensionem afferre, be vexatious, annoying
irritare, lacerare, provocare, make angry, exasperate, harass; *noun irritatiō*
Acpn sermōnibus provocare, exasperate
Dpn stomachum facere or **movēre**, annoy, irritate; **stomachārī**, be angry or peevish; **stomachōsus**, peevish, irritable
bilem commovet, it rouses anger
molestus, troublesome, annoying; **molestia**, annoyance, vexation, disgust; *sine molestiā tuā*, without trouble to yourself
dolor, resentment, indignation
indignārī, be angry, displeased, indignant; *noun indignatiō*

44.3 love, admiration, wonder, pity, kindness

amor, love; *amōrī amōre respondere*, return love; **amāre**, love; **adamāre**, grow fond of, love deeply; *adjs. amāns, amābilis*
pius, affectionate, loyal; *noun pietās*
meī studiōsus, devoted to me
fovēre, cherish
indulgere *Dpn*, be kind, indulgent to; *noun indulgentia*
diligere, esteem, regard
cārus, beloved, dear; **cāritās**, regard, affection
grātia, regard, friendship; *apud Acpn grātiām inire*, win one's favour; *grātiās acquirere*, win favour; **amōrem sibi conciliāre**, win affection
voluntās ergā *Acpn*, affection, regard for
grātulārī, congratulate; *noun grātulatiō*
verērī, reverērī, revere, esteem
observāre, respect, esteem; *noun observantia*
Acpn plūris facere, habere, ducere, aestimāre or **putāre**, esteem more highly
plūrimū *Dpn tribuere*, think very highly of
tē honōre or **in honōre habeo, tē honōre afficiō** or **augeō, tē in honōrem adducō**, honour you, do you honour
honōre apud Acpn esse, be honoured by
honōrātus, honoured, honourable
honestāre, honour

mīrārī, admīrārī, admire, wonder at; *nouns admīratiō*, admiration, wonder; *admīratiōnem mihi movēs*, I wonder, am surprised at you; **mīrāculum**, marvel, wonder; *esse mīrāculō*, excite wonder
mīrus, mīrābilis, mīrificus, admīrābilis, wonderful, astonishing, marvellous; *mīrum in modum*, wonderfully
obstupescere, be amazed; **stupor**, stupefaction, amazement; **stupefacere**, numb, stun
ostentum, prodigy, portent
suspicere (e.g. *eloquentiam Gpn*), admire

misereor, miseror, mē miseret, I pity; *noun miseratiō*; **miserors**, tender-hearted, pitiful; *noun misericordia*; *misericordiā frangī*, be moved by pity; **miserābilis**, pitiable
beneficium offerre *Dpn*, **benevolentia** *Acpn*
augere, show kindness to
inservire, servire *Dpn*, be at one's service, attached to
dēvincire (e.g. *benevolentia*), **obstringere** (e.g. *donīs*) *Acpn*, oblige, lay under an obligation
Acpn sibi obligare (e.g. *liberalitate*), bind someone to oneself

44.4 hatred, contempt, scorn

q.v. THE FOLLOWING 3 ENTRIES ARE MISSING IN EVAN'S AUDIO FILES
odium, hatred, aversion, dislike, grudge; *odiō esse Dpn*, be hated by; *verb odi*; *adj. odiōsus*, offensive, hateful
invidia, malice, hatred; *invidiam habeo*, am hated; *invidiā flagrō apud vōs*, am an object of unpopularity with you, am detested; **invidere**, take a dislike to; **invīsus**, hated; **invidiōsus**, unpopular, disliked
malevolus, ill-disposed, spiteful; *noun malevolentia*
malitia, ill-will, spite (underhand)
respuere, reject, dislike
offensus est mihi, he is offensive to me, I object to him
āspernārī, spurn (aversion)

contemptiō, *late contemptus*, contempt; in
contemptiōnem venīre, be despised;
contemptuī esse *or* habēre, despise
contemnere, disdain (as causing no fear);
dēspicere, disdain (as having no value);
haud contemnendus, far from contemptible;
noun **dēspicientia**
dēspicātus, contemptible; *nouns* **dēspiciātō**,
dēspicātus, contempt
spernere, **indīgnārī**, **repudiāre**, **rēicere**,
scorn, disdain
mē piget, I dislike, loathe
irridēre, **ēlūdere**, **illūdere**, **cavillārī**, ridicule,
mock, make fun of; *nouns* **irrisiō**, **irrisus**,
illūsiō, **cavillātiō**, mockery; **irrisor**,
cavillātor, mocker
dērīdēre, deride
lūdere *Acpn*, banter; **lūdibrium**, butt,
laughing-stock

beneficium offerre *Dpn*, **benevolentīā** *Acpn*
augēre, show kindness to
īnservīre, **servīre** *Dpn*, be at one's service,
attached to
dēvincīre (e.g. **benevolentīā**), **obstringere**
(e.g. **donīs**) *Acpn*, oblige, lay under an
obligation

q.v. THE ENTIRE SECTION 44.5 IS MISSING
IN EVAN'S AUDIO FILES

44.5 wish, desire

velle, wish, care to; **pervelle**, desire greatly;
voluntās, will, wish, desire
optāre, **cupīre**, wish, desire; *nouns* **cupīdō**,
cupiditās, both used in good and bad sense;
cupidāte incēnsus, aflame with passion;
cupiditātēs coercēre, subdue one's
passions
optātum, wish
concupīscere *Actg ad īnsāniam*, be madly
desirous of
cupidus, eager, passionate
exoptāre, **dēsīderāre**, **gestīre**, wish earnestly,
long for; *nouns* **dēsīderium**, **dēsīderātiō**;
dēsīderiō incēnsus, burning with desire
libīdō, desire, longing, caprice, wilfulness,
passion, lust; **libīdine ferrī**, be carried
away by passion; *adj.* **libīdinōsus**
licentia, licentiousness
appetēns, craving for; *noun* **appetītiō**

impetus, eager desire, e.g. **dīcendī**
avidus, longing eagerly for, desirous; *noun*
aviditās
utinam!, if only!
peroptātō, greatly to one's wish

44.6 be unwilling, prefer, shrink from, envy, curse

nōlle, **recūsāre**, be unwilling, reluctant; *noun*
recūsātiō
mē invītō, against my will
ingrātīs, against one's will
mālle, prefer
Acpn Dpn **praepōnere**, **antepōnere**,
praeferre, **anteferre**, **praeverttere**,
anteverttere, **praeoptāre**, prefer
potius, rather; **potissimum**, in preference to all
fugere, **subterfugere**, **vītāre**, avoid, shun;
noun **vītātiō**
abhorrēre, shrink from, detest
offendere, revolt
fastīdire, shrink from, loathe; **fastīdium** (*or*
satietātem) **parere**, disgust; *adj.*
fastidiōsus, fastidious
taedet, it disgusts; *noun* **taedium**; *afferre t.*
Dpn, disgust; *t. patī*, be disgusted
invidēre, envy; *invidiam subīre*, incur envy;
nouns **invidia**, envy; **invidentia**, envying;
adjs. **invidus**, **invidiōsus**, envious
malīgnus, **lividus**, envious
dētestārī (e.g. **omnibus precibus**) *Acpn*,
curse, execrate
exsecrārī, **male** *or* **mala precārī**, curse; *noun*
exsecrātiō; *adj.* **exsecrābilis**
precēs *P*, curse
sacer, accursed

44.7 hope, confidence

spēs, expectation, hope, prospect(s); *verb*
spērāre; *bene, rēctē s.*, look forward to
fidēs, **fidūcia**, **cōnfidentia**, confidence
fidere, **cōnfīdere**, trust
fidem tibi habeō, place reliance on you

q.v. bold, timid, see 38.4

44.8

verērī, **reverērī**, stand in awe of, fear; *noun*
reverentia, awe

timor, fear; hōc timōre, through fear of this; timōre afficere, frighten; timor incēdit animō, I am frightened; timōre oppressus, weighed down with anxiety; sē ex māgnō timōre recreāre, recover from a great fright; *adj.* **timidus**, frightened, faint-hearted; *verbs* **timēre**, **pertimēscere**, take alarm, be afraid of; **extimēscere**, fear greatly

metus, dread; abiectus metū, desperate; in metum tē addūcō, inspire you with fear; metū frangī, be overcome by fear; *verb* **metuere**; **metuendus**, formidable

• **metum** *Dpn* levāre, relieve from fear; ā metū respirāre, recover from fear

pavēre, be terrified, in a panic; *noun* **pavor**, dread, alarm, panic; pavōre percussus, dismayed; *adj.* **pavidus**, terrified

exhorrēscere, **inhorrēscere**, shudder, be horrified

formidō, fear; *verb* **formidāre**; *adj.*

formidolōsus, terrible; timid (*rare*)

reformidāre, shrink back from, dread; *noun* **reformidātiō**

• **terror**, terror; terrōrēs, bugbears; terrōrem inicere, offerre, strike terror in; incidit t. exercituī, panic seized the army; terrōrem inferre *Dpn*, terrify; *adj.*

perterritus, dismayed, panic-stricken

terrēre, **conterrēre**, **exterrēre**, **proterrēre**, **terrītāre**, terrify

absterrēre, frighten away, deter

terribilis, **tremendus**, dreadful, terrible (*terrōrem*, *formidinem*, *etc.*) **incutere**,

inspire, excite fear, fill with panic, etc.

excire, frighten, e.g. *ex somnō*

trepidus, alarmed, agitated; *verb* **trepidāre**; *noun* **trepidātiō**

obstupefactus, aghast

tremere, **contremiscere**, tremble; *noun* **tremor**

horrēre, tremble at, be afraid of; **horrēscere**, tremble, shudder; **perhorrēscere**, have a great horror of, be horrified at; *noun* **horror**; *adj.* **horribilis**, frightful

atrōx, horrible; *noun* **atrōcitas**

dēspērāre, despair, give up hope; dē summā rērum dēspērāre, despair wholly; salūte dēspērātā, rēbus dēspērātis, in despair; *noun* **dēspērātiō**; ad dēspērātiōnem pervenire, become desperate

animum contrahere or **dēmittere**, lose heart; *nouns* **contractiō** or **dēmissiō animi**

percellere, discourage, daunt

sollicitūdō, anxiety; *noun* **sollicitūdine** exonerāre, relieve from anxiety; **sollicitus**,

anxious, agitated; **sollicitāre**, cause fear, harass

suspendere, keep in suspense; *adj.* **suspēnsus**, anxious, in suspense

suspiciāri, suspect; *noun* **suspiciō**; in suspiciōnem (e.g. *avāritiae*) venire, cadere, be suspected of; *adj.* **suspiciōsus**, feeling or raising suspicion

45 LAW

45.1

iūs, law, justice; iūs cīvile, common law; iūs gentium, law of nature; iūs fāsque, law of God and man

• **iūre**, rightfully

iūstitia, justice

iūstus, just, lawful

aequus, fair, impartial

iniūstus, **inīquus**, unjust, unfair

senātūscōnsultum, decree of senate

lēx, law, enactment of Comitia Centūriāta; quī lēgēs condit, law-giver

lēgitimus, lawful, legal

privilēgium, law in favour of, or directed against, an individual

rogātiō, bill; *verb* **rogāre**, propose;

rogātiōnem prōmulgāre, publish; r.

accipere or iubēre, ratify, accept (a bill);

r. antiquāre, reject; r. suādēre, support;

rogātiōnī intercēdere, oppose b.

abrogāre, **rescindere lēgem**, repeal law; *noun* **abrogātiō**

ex lēge aliquid dērogāre, repeal law in part; *noun* **dērogātiō**

obrogāre lēgī, (partly) repeal a law (by a new one); *noun* **obrogātiō**

plēbiscitum, decision of Comitia Tribūta, ordinance; **scīscere**, decree, ordain, enact (of the people)

ēdictum, edict of magistrate; **ēdicere**, decree, ordain, give official notice

45.2 judge, jury

praetor, presiding judge

iūdex, judge, juror; i. iūstus, just j.; i.

cupidus, partial, unjust j.; citāre iūdicem, summon j.

arbiter, arbitrator, judge; a. honōrārius, arbitrator chosen by parties, not by judge;

arbitrium, decision of arbitrator

iūs reddere, dispense, administer justice

iudicāre, judge; i. sine cupiditate, j. impartially; rē nōndum iudicatā, pending the decision of the judge
inflectere iūs grātiā, pervert justice
tribūnal, judgement-seat
subsellium, bench of judge, court
iudicium, trial
iudicium or iudicēs dare, grant a trial (of praetor who proposed judges)
iustitium, suspension of legal business

45.3 plaintiff, defendant

āctor, is quī petit, plaintiff; **petitor**, in private cases; **accūsātor**, espec. in state offence, also generally
sacrāmentum, civil suit
causam agere, plead a case; **causam orāre**, dicere, plead one's cause, address the court
arcessere, sistere, citāre, in iūs or ad iudicium vocāre, or in iudicium addūcere or dēdūcere, summon, arraign, prosecute
Acpn in iudicium prōdūcere, bring before the court
Acpn lēge interrogāre, bring an action against
reus, defendant, prisoner, culprit; *Acpn* reum facere or agere, put on trial
is unde or ā quō petitur, defendant
nōmen Gpn dēferre, indict, impeach, put on trial
crīmen, accusation; in crīmen venīre *G*, in crīmine *G* esse, be charged with
dē pecūniis repetundis Acpn postulare, bring a charge of extortion against

45.4 lawsuit

quaestiō, inquiry; quaestiōnem dē *Ab* habēre or instituere, hold an inquiry about; quaestiōnī praeesse, conduct a trial (of judge)
causa, lawsuit, legal process; indictā causā, without going to court; c. integra, not settled
lis, lawsuit; **litigāre**, dispute, sue at law; **litigiōsus**, contentious; in dispute
dica, lawsuit; dicam scribere *Dpn*, bring an action against
diem dicere, fix a day
vas, bail, surety; vadēs poscere, ask for b.; vadem dare, give s.; vadem accipere, accept s.; sē dare vadem prō *Ab*, go bail for; vadem dēserere, forfeit one's b.

vadimōnium, bail, security; v. sistere or ad v. venīre, present oneself in court
vadārī, bind over by bail (to appear in court)
fidūciam committere Dpn, give a pledge
praes, surety (in money matters)
spondēre, become security; **spōnsus**, security, bail; **spōnsiō**, promise, guarantee; **spōnsor**, surety
prō Abpn intercēdere, go surety for
cautiō, bond, bail
pignus, pledge, security; *verb* pignerāre, give as a pledge
accūsāre, accuse, indict; fūrtī eum accūsāt, he charges him with theft
arguere (Acpn sceleris, crīmine, dē crīmine), accuse
dēlātor, accuser, informer
index, informer
cōsultus, lawyer
patrōnus, advocate
rabula, raucous advocate
advocāre, call in (as consultant); **advocātus**, legal assistant; *later*, advocate, attorney; **advocātiō**, legal assistance, counsel, the bar
causam dēfendere, make a defence (of oneself or another)
arbiter, auctor, testis, witness; testēs exhibēre, produce; Mārcum testem prōdūcere or prōferre, put M. in the witness box; t. mercēnnārius, bribed w.; falsum testem subōrnāre, suborn a false witness; *verbs* testārī, call upon as witness, bear witness; **antestārī**, call as witness
testimōnium, evidence; t. dicere, give e.
testificārī, testify; *noun* **testificātiō**
indicium, deposition, proof, evidence

45.5 voting, decision

tabella, tablet (with A=absolvō, C=condemnō, NL=nōn liquet)
urna, voting urn
sententia, decision, verdict
iudicium, decision of court
iūs dicere, prōnūntiāre, pronounce judgment
causam obtinēre, win; c. perdere, lose
prōvocāre ad Ac, make an appeal (to a higher court); *noun* **prōvocātiō**
liberātiō, acquittal

q.v. guilt, punishment, 47

iūrāre, swear; **iūsiūrandum**, oath; i. iūrāre, swear; i. accipere, be sworn; i.

cōservāre, keep oath; i. violāre, break oath; iūreiūrāndō stāre, abide by oath; iūreiūrāndō astringere *or* obstringere, bind by an oath, *with* sē=vow, swear; iūreiūrāndō dēvīnctus, bound by an oath; ad i. *Acpn* adigere, put on oath
adiūrāre, confirm on oath
abiūrāre, deny on oath
perīurium, laesa fidēs, nūllum iūsiūrāndum, false oath, perjury; **pēierāre *or* falsum iūrāre**, perjure oneself
litem redimere, come to terms (of opposing parties)

46 DANGER, PROTECTION, HELP

46.1 danger

perīculum, danger
discrīmen, critical situation, crisis, turning-point; risk, danger; rem in extrēmum d. addūcere *or* dēdūcere, risk all; rēs est in summō discrīmine, the situation is desperate
rēs est in angustō, the situation is critical
in extrēmīs suīs rēbus, in the greatest danger
perīculōsus, late anceps, dangerous
perīclitārī, risk, e.g. salūtem rēipūblicaē; *also* be in danger
omnia profundere, stake all
via lūbrica, dangerous path

46.2 safety


cavēre, beware; cavē canem; tibi caveō, am careful for your safety
praecavēre, guard against
ēvītāre, dēvītāre, avoid; *noun* dēvītātīō
effugere, ēvādere, escape; **effugium**, means of escape
perfugium, receptāculum, receptus, respectus, refugium, shelter, refuge; habēre receptum ad *Acpn*, be able to take shelter with
cōfugere *or* refugere ad *Acpn*, flee for refuge to, take refuge with
ad meam fidem cōfugiunt, they flee to me for protection
salūs, safety; tibi salūtem afferō, save you; salūtī meae diffīdo, fear for my safety; salūtem fugā petere, effect one's escape

tūtus (e.g. ab hostibus), **salvus**, safe; tē salvum volō, wish for your safety
incolumis, intāctus, integer, safe and sound, uninjured
integellus, fairly intact
inviolātus, unharmed, inviolate
in portū esse, be in safety
tūtō, safely
nūllō meō perīculō, without danger to me

46.3 help

auxilium, help; petere a., seek h.; a. tibi ferō, auxiliō tibi sum, help you; auxiliō venīre, come to assistance; *verb* auxiliārī
appellō tē, appeal to you for help
iuvāre, adiuvāre, fulcīre *Acpn*, subvenīre
Dpn, help
adiūtor, administer, helper, assistant
manūs *Dpn* *or* ad *Acpn* tendere, implore help
praestō esse, attend upon, serve, aid
Dpn adesse, help (*espec. as* advocātus)
opem petere ab *Abpn*, seek help; **opem ferre**
Dpn, bring assistance
opitulārī *Dpn*, help
succurrere, hasten to help
subsidiō venīre *or* proficīsci, go to aid
subsidiū submittere, subsidiō mittere, send to the aid
sublevāre, support, sustain
(animū) cōfirmāre, sustain, encourage;
noun cōfirmātīō
operā tuā, by your aid

46.4 protection, defence

tūrī, tūtārī, cūstōdīre, praesidēre *D*, guard
cūstōs, guardian, protector
vindex, protector, deliverer; **vindicāre**, defend, protect, deliver
tūtīō, praesidium, tūtēla, protection
prōpūgnāculum, bulwark, defence
cūstōdia, watch
tegere, obtegere, prōtegere, protect
 **fidem *Gpn* sequī *or* in fidē *Gpn* esse**, be under the protection of
Acpn in fidem recipere, afford protection to
arcēre, prohibēre, keep off
sē mūnīre contrā *Actg*, secure oneself against
servāre, cōservāre, preserve, save;
cōservātor, servātor, saviour;
cōservātīō, preservation
dēfendere, defend; *nouns* dēfensiō, defence;
dēfēnsor, defender

ā morte ēripere, save one's life

46.5 hindrance

obstruere, obesse *Dpn*, **interpellāre**,
prohibēre *Ab or ab Ab*, impede, obstruct,
hinder

adversārī, oppose; *adj. and noun adversārius*
impedīre, praepedīre, obstāre, obsistere,
officere, praevertere, thwart, hinder,
oppose, stand in someone's way; *noun*
impedimentum

interclūdere (e.g. *viam Dpn*), cut off, bar
deterreere, deter, discourage, prevent, hinder

46.6

ūtī, use
ūtīlis, helpful, useful; *noun* **ūtilitās**
prōdesse, be of use or advantage, benefit,
profit
salūtāris, salūber or salūbris, serviceable,
beneficial

inūtilis, useless
inānis, useless, unprofitable; *noun* **inānitās**
futtilis, vain, worthless; *noun* **futtilitās**
frūstrā, nēquiquam, in vain

47 GUILT, PUNISHMENT

47.1 crime, wrongdoing

facinus, misdeed, outrage, crime; *f.*
committere or facere, commit a crime
scelus, crime, wickedness, sin; *s.*
excōgitāre, concipere, plan a crime; *s.*
suscipere, facere, committere or
ēdere, commit a crime; *ad scelus*
impellere, urge to crime
commissum, crime
capital, rēs capitālis, capital crime
nefās, wickedness; *n. est*, it is forbidden
nēquitia, worthlessness, vileness, wickedness
turpitudō, vileness
foeditās, shameful
flāgitium, shameful act, atrocity; *f. facere*
or committere
impūrītās, shameful
maleficium, malefactum, evil deed

culpa, fault, crime, blame; *in culpā esse*, be
guilty, culpable; *extrā culpam*, free from
blame

noxa, delictum, transgression, injury, wrong,
offence, crime

noxia, guilt

obnoxius, guilty, liable to punishment

peccātum, sin

nocēre, laedere, injure

iniūria, wrong, injury; *iniūriam facere*,
impōnere, inferre D, wrong; *iniūriam*
persequī, ulciscī, punish, avenge

damnum, injury, harm, damage

patī, suffer

47.2 criminal, wicked

malus, evil

facinorōsus, criminal, vicious

improbus, impudēns, impudīcus, wicked,
shameless; *nouns* **improbitās, impudentia,**
impudīcītia

scelestus, scelerātus, cōnscelerātus, wicked,
villainous; **maleficus**, wicked, criminal;
malignus, wicked, spiteful; **nocēns**, wicked,
culpable

perditus, impius, abandoned, wicked; *noun*
impietās

noxius, guilty; criminal

nefārius, abominable, execrable, monstrous;
obscēnus, shameless, revolting, immoral;
probrōsus, shameful, vicious; **prōflīgātus**,
vile, dissolute

nēquam, worthless

taeter, repulsive, abominable

turpis, disgraceful; *sē turpiter gerere*,
behave disgracefully

foedus, dishonourable, shameful

flāgitīōsus, infamous, dissolute

impūrus, shameful, infamous

barbarus, savage

nocēns, reus, sōns, malefactor, criminal

luēs, pestēs hominum, (social) pests

scelus, verberō, furcifer, scoundrel

Dpn **pecūniam adimere**, rob

fūr, thief; *verb* **fūrārī**

fūrtum, theft

clepere, steal secretly

latrō, robber, pirate, brigand; **latrōcinium**,
robbery, piracy, brigandage; *verb*
latrōcinārī

praedō, robber; **praedārī**, plunder, rob

ēreptor, robber
grassātor, latrunculus, footpad
rapīna, act of robbery; *P* pillage
raptum, praeda, plunder, booty
dēspoliāre, dēpeculārī, rob, plunder; *noun*
dēpeculātor
repetundae, extortion
interceptor, embezzler
pīrāta, pirate; *adj.* **pīrāticus**

Dpn **vītam adimere** or **auferre**, *Acpn* **vītā**
prīvāre or **expellere**, kill
sicārius, homicīda, interfecto, **percussor**,
assassin, murderer
mors illāta per scelus, assassination
parricīda, murderer of father or other relation;
parricīdium, murder of a relation;
frātricīda, murder of brother
lētum, violent death
strangulāre, strangle
venēnum, vīrus, poison; *v.* *Dpn* **dare**,
parāre, praebēre or **infundere**,
administer *p.*; *Acpn* **venēnō tollere** or
venēnāre, poison
necāre, (e.g. fame, **venēnō**), kill (starve to
death, poison)
caedēs, nex, occīdiō, occīsiō, murder; *Dpn*
necem inferre or **offerre**, murder;
caedere, ēnecāre, exanimāre, necāre,
interficere, interimere, occīdere, slay, kill;
occīdiōne occīdere, massacre,
exterminate
effligere, strike dead, kill
sanguinem haurīre, shed blood
iugulāre, cut the throat, kill
obtruncāre, trucīdāre, butcher, cut to pieces

47.3 arrest, innocence, acquit, pardon

suspīcārī, suspect
querī, complain
dēprendere, catch, find out; *noun*
dēprehēnsiō
comprehendere in fūrtō, catch in the act of
stealing
convincere, convict (of crime or error)
praemandāta *P*, warrant for arrest
prehendere, comprehendere *Acpn*, arrest
innocēns, insōns, innocent, guiltless; *noun*
innocēntia
sibi nullius culpaē cōnsciūs, conscious of no
guilt
liber ā dēlictīs, free from crime

castus, pure, innocent; *noun* **castitās**
carēre reprehēnsiōne, be blameless
sānc̄timōnia, innocence
nullā meā culpā, through no fault of mine
praetendere, put forward as an excuse
absolvere, scelere solvere, acquit;
absolvitur fūrtī
excūsāre, excuse; *noun* **excūsātiō**
pūrgāre, justify, excuse; *noun* **pūrgātiō**
venia, pardon
multam, poenam remittere, remit
īgnōscere, forgive
condōnāre, pardon, refrain from punishing (a
crime)
satisfactiōnem accipere, accept an apology

47.4 fraud, deception

fraus, fraud; **fraudāre, dēfraudāre**, cheat,
defraud, purloin, embezzle; *noun* **fraudātiō**,
fraudātor; *adj.* **fraudulentus**
dolus, craft, deceit; **dolus malus**, fraud; *adj.*
dolōsus
māchina, trick, device; *verb* **māchinārī**;
nouns **māchinātiō, māchinātor**
Acpn **stratēgēmate percutere**, defraud by a
trick
dissimulāre, dissemble, hide one's feelings
latebra, pretence, subterfuge
interpolāre, falsify
dēcipere, circumvenīre, ēlūdere, frūstrārī,
Dpn **impōnere, verba dare**, deceive, cheat
dēstitūere, deceive, mislead; *noun* **dēstitūtiō**,
deception
circumscribere, cheat, ensnare
ingere, simulāre, feign, pretend; *noun* **fictiō**,
counterfeiting; **simulātiō**, deceit; **simulātor**,
pretender, hypocrite
in speciem, as a pretence; **praebēre speciem**
pūgnantium, pretend to be fighting
subterfugere (e.g. **militiam**), escape (by
trickery)
fallere, lead astray; *adj.* **fallāx**, deceitful; *noun*
fallācia, stratagem, intrigue
illicere, pellicere, allure, lead astray, decoy
prōdere, betray; **prōditor**, traitor; **prōditiō**,
treachery
perfidus, infidus, treacherous, false

47.5 confession, remorse, atonement

fatērī, cōnfītērī, āgnōscere, confess, own
paenitet eum, he regrets, feels remorse for
pudet eum, he feels ashamed, blushes for
pudor, shame

veniam petere *or* **poscere quod**, apologise for
expiāre, luere, poenās dare, make amends,
atone for; *noun* **expiātiō**
piāculum, offering as atonement

47.6 conviction, punishment

coarguere, convict of guilt or crime

damnāre, condemnāre, condemn; *capitis*
eum condemnat, condemns him to death;
capitis damnātus est, *nouns* **damnātiō,**
condemnātiō

pūnīre, castīgāre, punish; *nouns* **pūnītiō,**
castīgātiō, castīgātor

poena, penalty; *poenam capere dē Abpn*,
petere *or* *expetere* *ab Abpn*, *repetere*,
sūmere dē Abpn, *statuere*, *poenā*
afficere *or* *multāre*, exact or inflict a p.,
punish; *poenās pendere, dēpendere,*
solvere, persolvere, perferre,
sufferre, luere, suffer punishment;
poenās subīre, submit to punishment,
undergo sentence

● **supplicium**, punishment; *ultimum s.*,
extreme penalty, capital punishment; *ad s.*
trādere, hand over for p.; *s. sūmere dē*
Abpn, *suppliciō afficere*, punish;
suppliciō affici, be put to death

carnifex, executioner

carnificīna, torture

tortor, executioner, torturer

animadvertere vitia in Acpn, punish

ulcīscī (Acpn prō scelere), avenge, punish;

ultor, avenger

inultus, unavenged, with impunity

vindex, avenger, punisher; *verb* **vindicāre**

impūne, impūnītē, without punishment, with
impunity; *noun* **impūnītās**; *adj.* **impūnītus**

multa, fine; *multam committere, incur f.*;
multam Dpn irrogāre, impose f.; *multam*
remittere, remit f.; *multā coercēre*,
punish with a fine; *verb* **multāre**; *nouns*
irrogātiō multae, multātiō

ignōminia, infāmia, dishonour, disgrace;

ignōminiam Dpn inūrere, or ignōminiā
notāre Acpn, brand with dishonour

vāpulāre, be flogged

virga, ferula, rod; *virgīs caedere*, flog

verbera, flogging; *castīgāre Acpn*

verberibus, punish by flogging; **verberāre**,
flog, chastise

flagellum, scourge, whip; *verb* **flagellāre**

secūris, axe; *secūrī percutere*, behead

crux, cross; *crucī affigere*, crucify; *verb*
cruciāre

q.v. THE REST OF SECTION 47.6 IS
MISSING IN EVAN'S AUDIO FILES

vincīre, bind, fetter

vinculum, bond, chain, fetter; *in vincula*
conicere, put in prison; *vinculīs*
cōnstringere, fetter

compedēs, fetters, shackles

pedica, shackle, chain for feet

catēna, chain; *catēnās inicere Dpn*, put in
fettors

carcer, cūstōdia, prison; *in carcerem (or*
vincula) conicere or dēmittere,
imprison; ē or dē carcere ēmittere,
release from p.

arca, prison, cell

cūstōdīre, keep under arrest

q.v. exile, 30.4

q.v. law, 45

48-50 SUNDRY GROUPS

48.1 take, hold, get

capere, take

sūmere, take up

dēprōmere, take or fetch out

assūmere, adopt, take

capessere, captāre, catch at

arripere, corripere, pick up, snatch up

intercipere, intercept; *noun* **interceptiō**

rapere, prehendere, apprehendere,

comprehendere, seize, grasp; **rapāx,**

grasping, rapacious; *noun* **rapācītās**

occupāre, seize, occupy

arrogāre, claim as one's own

appetere, try to get

aspīrāre ad Ac, aspire to

affectāre, seek, pursue

assequī, cōnsequī, dēvenīre in Ac or ad Ac,
attain, reach

attingere, touch

nancīscī, reach, get

acquīrere, adipīscī, apīscī, obtain, get; *noun*
adeptiō

tenēre, hold; **tenāx**, gripping

sustinēre, support, hold up

48.2 strike, shake, break

caedere, ferire, percutere, quatere, strike, hit
verbera *P*, flogging; **verberare**, beat, scourge
vāpulāre, be beaten
mulcāre, beat, maul
tundere, thump, beat
plāga, blow; *plāgam infligere*, strike;
plāgam accipere, be struck; **plāgōsus**,
fond of flogging
ictus, blow (that wounds)
fūstis, clāva, cudgel, club
pulsāre (e.g. *ōstium*), beat, knock at
conculcāre, prōculcāre, crush under foot,
trample on
frangere, rumpere, break; **frāgmen**,
fragment, splinter; **fragilis**, fragile
cōfringere, break in pieces
quatere, shake
quassāre, conquassāre, shake violently,
shatter
collidere, dash together
concutere, shatter, shake
discutere, shatter

48.31 do

agere, do, act, negotiate; **actiō**, acting, action;
agitātiō, activity
facere, do, make; **factum, facinus**, deed,
action
facessere, accomplish
perficere, perfect, bring about
exsequi, perform, fulfil
suscipere, undertake
agitāre *Actg*, **versārī in A**, be engaged in,
occupied with
rēs gestae, deeds, achievements
sē nōn tenēre, or sē tenēre nōn posse, or
tenērī nōn posse, or sibi temperāre nōn
posse, quīn subj., be unable to keep from
doing


48.32 refrain, restrain

abstinēre *Ab*, **temperāre ab** *Ab*, abstain from
absistere *Ab*, **dēsistere** *Ab*, **supersedere** *Ab*,
desist from, cease
sē sustinēre, nē subj., refrain from doing
parcere *Dtg*, desist from, refrain from
dētrectāre, recūsāre, abnuere, shrink from,
decline or refuse to do
cessāre, hang back (from something one has
begun *or* has to do)

frēnum, restraint, check; *frēnōs adhibere*,
restrain; *verb* **īnfrēnāre, refrēnāre**; *adj.*
effrēnātus, unbridled
tenēre, inhibēre, īnfringere, sustinēre,
reprehendere, reprimere, restringere
(*with Ac*), **moderārī** (*with D*), restrain,
check; *noun* **inhibitīō**
coercēre, comprimere, restrain, repress, curb

q.v. unrestrained, 38.3


48.33 agent, messenger

 *Actg per Acpn* **trānsigere**, transact through
someone
trānsāctor, agent, negotiator
interpres, agent
minister (e.g. *sceleris*), tool
allēgāre, send as agent or messenger
lēgāre, send as ambassador; **lēgātus**,
ambassador; **lēgātīō**, embassy
nūntius, messenger
servus ā pedibus, prodromus, messenger,
courier

48.34 manage

administrāre, manage, superintend; *noun*
administrātiō
prōcūrāre, manage; **prōcūrātiō**, management;
prōcūrātor, manager, administrator
praesidēre, manage, direct; **praeses**, director
dispēnsāre, manage
ordināre, regulate

48.4 example, model

 **exemplar, exemplum**, example, model;
exemplum afferre, adduce e.; *exempla*
sūmere, select e.; *Actg* *exemplō pōnere*, set
as an e.
specimen, pattern, model
effigiēs, ideal

48.51 press, grind, crush

premere, press
comprimere, press together
supprimere, press down
tundere, contundere, crush, bruise
frangere, crush
conterere, grind, pound

48.52 suppress, overwhelm, overthrow

comprimere, opprimere, crush, suppress
obruere, overwhelm
sternere, prōsternere, prōfligāre, labefacere, labefactāre, overthrow

48.6 stretch

tendere, stretch, distend, extend
intendere, extend
extendere, stretch, spread out
distendere, stretch out, distend
praetendere, porrigere, stretch out, hold out, extend
patēre, pertinēre, spread out, stretch (*intrans.*)

48.7 cut, scrape

secāre, cut; **sectiō**, cutting
succidere, cut off, through or down
incidere, cut into
culter, knife
rādere, scrape
scalpere, scratch, scrape

48.8 pierce

figere, cōnfigere, trānsfigere, cōnfodere, perfodere, trānsfodere, pierce
percutere, pierce, strike through
perforāre, make a hole through, pierce through
trānsverberāre, pierce, thrust through
trāicere, strike through, pierce

48.9 tight, loose

artus, tight, taut
astringere, draw together
laxus, loose, slack; *verb laxāre*
solvere, exsolvere, resolvere, loosen

49.1 custom, usual, unusual

mōs, custom; *perducere Actg in mōrem*, make customary; *mōrem tenēre, retinēre or servāre*, keep a c.
suēscere, become accustomed; *perf. suēvī*, am accustomed; **suētus**, accustomed, usual
assuēscere, grow or be accustomed; **assuētus**, accustomed, used to; **assuēfacere**, accustom

cōsuēscere, accustom, accustom oneself; *cōsuēvī*, am accustomed; **cōsuētūdō**, custom, habit; *cōsuētūdine or ex c. or prō c.*, habitually, from custom; *praeter cōsuētūdinem*, against one's c.; *cōsuētūdinem referre*, restore a c.; *in cōsuētūdinem venire*, become a habit
īnsuēscere, accustom, get accustomed
īnsuētus, accustomed *and* unaccustomed to; unusual
factitāre, be accustomed to do, do usually
ut fit, as usually happens
īnstitūtum, custom, tradition; *īnstitūtō suō*, in one's customary way
solēre, be accustomed, wont; **solitus**, wonted, usual; **solitum**, what is usual, custom
sollemnis, usual; **sollemne**, custom, practice
inveterāscere, become fixed, established; **inveterārī**, be firmly established
dēsūēscere, be or grow unaccustomed; *noun dēsūētūdō*
exolēscere, pass out of use
vulgāris, ordinary, common
ūsitātus, usual, customary
īnūsitātus, unusual, extraordinary, rare
īnsolēns, unusual, unaccustomed to; *noun īnsolentia*, being unaccustomed; **īnsolitus**, unaccustomed, unusual
īnaudītus, unusual, strange
rārus, rare, unusual
singulāris, remarkable, rare, extraordinary
novus, novel, singular
extrāōrdinārius, extraordinary

49.2 suitable, fit, proper, unsuitable

commodus, fit, suitable, convenient; *noun commoditās*
aptus, suitable, fit, proper, capable of
accomodātus, appositus, suitable, appropriate
congruēns, appropriate
capāx, capable of, fit for
cōnsentāneus, becoming, proper; *cōnsentāneum est with inf.*, it is fitting
habilis, suitable, convenient
idōneus, proper, fit, suitable
opportūnus, convenient, apt, favourable; *noun opportunitās*, favourable situation, time or circumstance
convenit with inf., it is suitable
pār or fās est with inf., it is right, proper
mātūrē, opportunely
incommodus, unsuitable, inconvenient
ineptus, unfitting, unsuitable
importūnus, unsuitable

q.v. opportunity, occasion, 2.6

49.3 correspond, agree, inconsistent

congruere cum *Abtg*, correspond or agree with
quadrāre, fit into, square with
respondere, correspond, e.g. *paria paribus*
respondent
cohaerere, be consistent
repugnare, be inconsistent with
pugnātia loqui, contradict oneself
haec incōstantissimē dīcuntur, these statements are very inconsistent

49.4 substitute

subdere, substitute; *filius subditus*, changeling
substituere prō *Abpn or Abtg*, substitute
supponere in locum *G*, substitute
vicarius, substituted; *as noun* substitute, deputy, proxy

50.1 await

expectare, look out for, await; *noun*
expectatiō; in *expectatiōne esse*, be expected; *praeter expectatiōnem*, unexpectedly; *expectatiōnem movere*, commovere *OR* concitare; *expectatiōnem omnium vincere*, surpass all expectations
opperiri, wait, wait for
insperatus, inexpectatus, unexpected
praeter or contrā opiniōnem, ex insperatō, dē trānsversō (e.g. *rogare*), unexpectedly

50.2 necessary, inevitable

neesse est, it is necessary, inevitable;
necessitas, necessity, compulsion;
necessarius, necessary, inevitable;
necessariō, necessarily
opus est, e.g. *mihi*, I must
nōn possum nōn inf., facere nōn possum quīn subj., I must
fieri nōn potest quīn subj., it is inevitable that

50.3 inform

certiorem facere *Acpn Gtg or dē Abtg or Ac and inf.*, **indicare** *Actg*, inform of

impertire, communicate, impart
significare, intimate
afferre, referre, report, inform; *nihil novī ad nōs afferēbatur*, we received no news

50.4 make known, publish

vulgare, spread about, make known
dīvulgare, publish, make widely known
pervulgare, make generally known
prōmulgare, publish; *noun* **prōmulgatiō**
in pūblicum prōponere, make known
ēmānare (e.g. in *vulgus*), issue, be spread
ēnūntiāre, divulge
praecō, herald, crier; **praecōnium**, publication

50.5 power, strength

vīs, force, power; *summā vī*, with all one's might
revirescere, regain strength
nervī *P*, vigour, strength; **nervosus**, vigorous
pollere, be strong; **pollens**, mighty, powerful
vigere, be vigorous; *noun* **vigor**
plūrimum posse, be most powerful
potens, powerful; **potentia**, power (*espec.* political); **potestas**, might, power, political power

50.6 contain, receptacle

continere, enclose, contain
includere, enclose
in esse *Dtg*, be contained in
corbis, fiscina, quālus, basket; **sportula, sportella**, little basket (for food); **copinus**, big basket; **quasillum**, wool basket
saccus, sack, bag; **reticulum**, network bag;
culleus, follis (*dim. folliculus*), leather bag
arca (*dim. arcula*), chest, box; **cista** (*dim. cistella, cistellula, cistula*), box; **capsa** (*dim. capsula*), box (for books); **alabaster**, box (for perfumes, unguents); **pyxis**, box (for unguents, medicine)
armarium, cupboard
horreum, storeroom, granary; **cella penāria, oleāria, vīnāria**, storeroom for provisions, oil, wine; **apotheca**, storeroom (*espec.* for wine); **carnarium**, larder

q.v. purse, 33.2

q.v. receptacles for liquids, 29.8

q.v. stables, 8.3

Appendix 1: Abbreviations

<i>Ab</i>	ablative	<i>m</i>	masculine
<i>Abtg</i>	ablative of thing (i. e. not person)	<i>n</i>	neuter
<i>Ac</i>	accusative	<i>P</i>	plural
<i>Acpn</i>	accusative of the person	<i>Pass.</i>	passive
<i>Actg</i>	accusative of the thing (i. e. not person)	<i>plp.</i>	in poets and late (post-Augustan) prose
<i>adj.</i>	adjective	<i>refl.</i>	reflexive
<i>comp.</i>	comparative	<i>S</i>	singular
<i>Dpn</i>	dative of person	<i>SN</i>	singular nominative
<i>Dtg</i>	dative of thing (i. e. not person)	<i>subj.</i>	subjunctive
<i>G</i>	genitive	<i>superl.</i>	superlative
<i>Gtg</i>	genitive of thing (i. e. not person)	<i>trans.</i>	transitive
<i>impers.</i>	impersonal	<i>usu.</i>	usually
<i>intrans.</i>	intransitive		

Appendix 2: Errors in the original publication

1.5	dēniquē → dēnique
3.3	fīnis → fīnis
3.6	mortālitās → mortālitās
5.1	adāctīō → adāctiō
5.3 („out“)	ēdere, ēmittere → second meaning omitted as unclear what Mr. Ripman meant ("et out")
5.8	in contrāriās partes → in contrāriās partēs
6.1	quousque? → quoūsqe?
6.3	religāre, bind back, back → religāre, bind back, bind
8	agrī cūtura → agrī cultūra
10	crīnīs → crīnis
12.1	ea quae subiectae sunt sēnsibus → ea quae subiecta sunt sēnsibus
13.2	fidibus dīscere → fidibus discere
14.2	āmīttere → āmittere
14.2	operire → operīre
14.3	nitens → nitēns
22.2	pālmōsus → palmōsus
22.6	lens → lēns
30.7	optimī cīves → optimī cīvēs
30.8	de vectīgālibus eximere → dē vectīgālibus eximere
32.1	sortītīō → sortitiō
32.2	sestertium → sēstertium
33.5	frūctus industriae perdere → frūctūs industriae perdere
33.7	vēnīre → venīre

36	instrūmentum → īnstrūmentum
37.1	armātūras → armātūrae
37.1	accēnsi → accēnsī
37.7	mūrās (cunīculō) subruere → mūrōs (cunīculō) subruere
37.7	custōdia → cūstōdia
38.7	sensus commūnis → sēnsus commūnis
38.8	crudēlitātem exercēre → crūdēlitātem exercēre
47.6	supplicium sūmere dē Acpn → supplicium sūmere dē Abpn

Appendix 3: Mistakes in Evan Millner's audio versions

1.1	„ante meridiem“: false translation „in the afternoon“
1.1	„antemeridianus“: false translation „noon (adj.)“
1.6	„abhinc quattuor annos“: Evan gives the example "annos tribus diebus" instead of the correct "a[bhinc] tribus diebus"
1.7	„mora“: Evan says „nullam moram interponēre (!) quin“ as if „interponere“ were a verb of the second conjugation.
2.4	„quot annos natus es?“: Evan gives the example "annos XXX natus vixi" instead of "annos XXX vixi".
2.5	"obsolescere": Evans says "obolescere" instead of "obsolescere"
3.1	„initium“: Evan translates "creatio" as creator which is not correct.
3.6	„mors“: "mortalitas" translated as death (noun) instead of "being subject to death (noun)"
3.6	"mortem oppetere": Evan says "opertere" instead of "oppetere"
3.6	English word "obsequies" treated and pronounced as if it were a Latin one
5.1	"accedere": Evan says "aditum" and translates it as "an approach". However, "aditum" is only part of the sample sentence "aditum DPN ad ACTG intercludere".
6.1	"abesse": Evan doesn't render the example "longe a." as "longe abesse" but simply as "longe a."
6.1	"obtendere": pronounced as "obstendere"
7.4	"pulvis": adjective "pulverulentus" pronounced as "pulverentulus"
8.1	"agricola": "colonus" pronounced as "colona"
8.3	"bos": Evan pronounces "bovillus" and "iuvensus" together as if both mean "bullock, ox". However, "bovillus" is an adjective like "boarius". Only "iuvensus" means "bullock, ox".
9.2	"flumen": Evan gives the example "pedibus f. transire" as "pedibus flumine transire". However, it should be "pedibus flumen transire" as can be seen from Ripman's dictionary entry "pes".
9.5	"navem demergere": Evan says "se mergi" instead of simply "mergi".
12.1	"hebes": "hebere" translated as "to blunten" instead of "to be blunt".
12.1	"sensus": Evan says "ea quae subiectae sunt sensibus". It should be "ea quae subiecta sunt sensibus" (this is an error in the original text).
14.1	"spectare": Evan gives the example "praebere spectaculo". It should be „spectaculum praebere“ or "spectaculum (or spectaculo) esse" instead.
17.92	"recensere": pronounced as if it were a verb of the 3rd conjugation. It's a 2nd-conj. verb ("recēnsēre").
25.5	"hospes": Evan gives the example "hospitalis facere". It should be "hospitium facere" instead.

- 26.3 "vestigium": example "vestigia persequi" translated as "follow in front of". It should be "follow in footsteps of".
- 26.5 "ulcus": Evan gives a third Latin lemma "ulcer". This does not exist but instead is the English meaning "ulcer" of "ulcus" and "vomica".
- 29.9 "dormitum": Evan says "ad quietum ire" instead of "ad quietem ire". Also it is meant "dormitum ire" and "cubitum ire".
- 30.4 "consul": "consulatu fungi" translated as "resign the consulship". It means "act as consul".
- 30.6 "caput": Evan gives the example "capite se deminui" instead of "capite deminui".
- 32.1 "accidere": Evan gives three Latin expressions for "I happened to be present" ("accidit", "evenit", and "ut adessem"). However, there are only two: "accidit ut adessem" and "evenit ut adessem".
- 33.1 "res familiaris": Evan pronounces "neglegere" is as if it were a verb of the 2nd conjugation. It's a 3rd-conj. verb.
- 33.5 "pecuniam": Evan says "pecuniam in aliquae emptione consumere". It should be "pecuniam in alicuius emptione consumere".
- 37.1 "agmen": Evan gives "agmen novissimi" as another variant of "rearguard". It should be "novissimi" only, however.
- 37.1 "armaturae": Evan gives the lemma "armaturas" (an error in the book itself). It should be "armaturae" instead.
- 37.3 "miles": Evan gives the example "manipularis legionarius" instead of "miles legionarius".
- 37.3 "militiae": pronounced as "militae"
- 37.61 "obses": Evan gives the examples "obses inter se dare", "obses accipere", "obses hostibus imponere". It should be "obsides" instead.
- 37.63 "proelium": Evan adds "congressus" before the lemmas "proelium, bello, ferro, armis". "congressus" belongs to the previous entry, however, not to this one.
- 37.66 "salvus": "incolumis" pronounced like "incolumnis".
- 37.7 "castra": Evan gives the example "locum ad castris idoneum deligere". It should be "locum castris idoneum deligere" instead.
- 37.7 "muros (cuniculo) subruere": Evan gives "muras" instead of "muros".
- 38.1 "animi pravitas": pronounced as "animi privatas"
- 38.3 "obstinatus": pronounced as "obstantinus"
- 38.8 "mitis": Evan gives the translations "gentle, kind". It should be "gentle, mild" instead.
- 39.2 "subsiciva tempora": pronounced as "subsciva tempora"
- 40.13 "veterator": pronounced as "venerator"
- 40.31 "vir doctus": pronounced as "vir ductus"
- 40.44 "forte": "forsitan" pronounced as "fortisan"
- 40.45 "venit mihi in mentem": pronounced as "venit mihi in mentum"
- 40.51 "ratio": "ratiuncula" pronounced as "ratinuncula"
- 41.21 "contionari": Evan translates it as "a harangue, an address". It is a verb, however, not a noun.
- 41.61 "suadere": Evan translates "fratri illud persuasit" as "I am convinced" like the next two examples, which do not belong to the first one, however.
- 41.61 "hortari": "hortator" and "adhortator" translated as "inciting" (noun). Both signify "one who exhorts, an inciter, encourager".
- 41.62 "de sententia movere": Evan says "a propositio flectere" instead of "a proposito flectere".
- 41.91 "propositum": Evan says "a propositio aberrare/egredi" instead of "a proposito aberrare/egredi".
- 43.3 "argumentum": Evan gives the example "argumentum adduce". "adduce" is not Latin, however, but is the English word.

- 44.1 "gaudium": the meaning "signs of joy" belongs to the plural "gaudia" not to "gaudium".
- 44.6 "invidere": Evan says "invidium subire" instead of "invidiam subire".
- 44.8 "metum levare": Evan says "a metu resirare" instead of "a metu respirare".
- 44.8 "terror": Evan says "incidit terrorem exercitui". It should be "incidit terror exercitui".
- 45.1 "iure": Evan says "iniure" instead of "iure".
- 46.4 "fidem sequi": "fidem alicui sequi" said instead of "fidem alicuius sequi" and "in fide alicui esse" instead of "in fide alicuius esse".
- 47.4 "strategemate percutere": Evan says "percutēre", as if it were of the 2nd conjugation. It belong to the 3rd, however.
- 47.4 "illicere": Evan pronounces "allure" as if it were a Latin word. It is not.
- 47.6 "supplicium": Evan says "supplicium sumere de aliquem" instead of "supplicium sumere de aliquo" (error in the book itself).
- 48.33 "per transigere": Evan says "per aliquem transigere" instead of "aliquid per aliquem transigere".
- 48.4 "exemplar": For the sample phrase "exemplum afferre" Evan gives the translation "select an example". It should be "adduce an example" instead. Also, Evan says "adduce exemplum" as if it were a phrase in Latin". It isn't. The entry in the book read „adduce e.“ and is English.